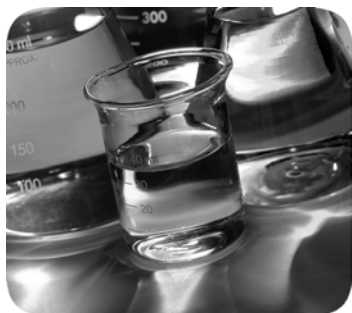


# PowerFlex 20-750-ENETR Dual-port EtherNet/IP Option Module

Firmware Revision Number 1.xxx



# Important User Information

Solid-state equipment has operational characteristics differing from those of electromechanical equipment. Safety Guidelines for the Application, Installation and Maintenance of Solid State Controls (publication [SGI-1.1](#) available from your local Rockwell Automation® sales office or online at <http://www.rockwellautomation.com/literature/>) describes some important differences between solid-state equipment and hard-wired electromechanical devices. Because of this difference, and also because of the wide variety of uses for solid-state equipment, all persons responsible for applying this equipment must satisfy themselves that each intended application of this equipment is acceptable.





In no event will Rockwell Automation, Inc. be responsible or liable for indirect or consequential damages resulting from the use or application of this equipment.

The examples and diagrams in this manual are included solely for illustrative purposes. Because of the many variables and requirements associated with any particular installation, Rockwell Automation, Inc. cannot assume responsibility or liability for actual use based on the examples and diagrams.

No patent liability is assumed by Rockwell Automation, Inc. with respect to use of information, circuits, equipment, or software described in this manual.

Reproduction of the contents of this manual, in whole or in part, without written permission of Rockwell Automation, Inc., is prohibited.

Throughout this manual, when necessary, we use notes to make you aware of safety considerations.

	<b>WARNING:</b> Identifies information about practices or circumstances that can cause an explosion in a hazardous environment, which may lead to personal injury or death, property damage, or economic loss.
	<b>ATTENTION:</b> Identifies information about practices or circumstances that can lead to personal injury or death, property damage, or economic loss. Attentions help you identify a hazard, avoid a hazard, and recognize the consequence.
	<b>SHOCK HAZARD:</b> Labels may be on or inside the equipment, for example, a drive or motor, to alert people that dangerous voltage may be present.
	<b>BURN HAZARD:</b> Labels may be on or inside the equipment, for example, a drive or motor, to alert people that surfaces may reach dangerous temperatures.
<b>IMPORTANT</b>	Identifies information that is critical for successful application and understanding of the product.

Allen-Bradley, Rockwell Software, Rockwell Automation, TechConnect, PowerFlex, DriveExplorer, DriveTools, DriveExecutive, RSLinx, RSLogix, ControlLogix, PLC-5, SLC, and MicroLogix are trademarks of Rockwell Automation, Inc.

Trademarks not belonging to Rockwell Automation are property of their respective companies.

<b>Preface</b>	Conventions Used in This Manual . . . . .	7
	Rockwell Automation Support . . . . .	7
	Additional Resources . . . . .	8
	 <b>Chapter 1</b>	
<b>Getting Started</b>	Components. . . . .	9
	Features . . . . .	10
	Option Module Operating Modes . . . . .	11
	Understanding Parameter Types. . . . .	12
	Compatible Products . . . . .	13
	Required Equipment . . . . .	13
	Safety Precautions. . . . .	14
	Quick Start . . . . .	15
	 <b>Chapter 2</b>	
<b>Installing the Option Module</b>	Preparing for an Installation. . . . .	17
	Setting the Operating Mode. . . . .	19
	Setting the Node Address . . . . .	20
	Connecting the Option Module to the Drive . . . . .	22
	Connecting the Option Module to the Network. . . . .	23
	Applying Power . . . . .	26
	Commissioning the Option Module . . . . .	30
	 <b>Chapter 3</b>	
<b>Configuring the Option Module</b>	Configuration Tools. . . . .	31
	Using the PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM to Access Parameters. . . . .	32
	Setting the Option Module Node Address. . . . .	32
	Setting the Data Rate . . . . .	38
	Selecting Master-Slave or Peer-to-Peer Hierarchy (Adapter mode only) . . . . .	39
	Setting a Fault Action (Adapter mode only) . . . . .	46
	Setting Web Page Access. . . . .	48
	Resetting the Option Module . . . . .	49
	Restoring Option Module Parameters to Factory Defaults . . . . .	50
	Viewing the Option Module Status Using Parameters . . . . .	51
	Updating the Option Module Firmware . . . . .	52
	 <b>Chapter 4</b>	
<b>Configuring the I/O</b>	Using RSLinx Classic Software . . . . .	53
	Uploading the Electronic Data Sheet (EDS) File . . . . .	54
	ControlLogix Controller Example (Adapter mode only). . . . .	54

<b>Using the I/O (Adapter mode only)</b>	<b>Chapter 5</b>
	About I/O Messaging ..... 87
	Understanding the I/O Image ..... 88
	Using Logic Command/Status ..... 89
	Using Reference/Feedback ..... 89
	Using Datalinks ..... 90
	Example Ladder Logic Program Information ..... 91
	ControlLogix Controller Example ..... 92
<b>Using Explicit Messaging (Adapter mode only)</b>	<b>Chapter 6</b>
	About Explicit Messaging ..... 99
	Performing Explicit Messaging ..... 100
	ControlLogix Controller Examples ..... 101
<b>Troubleshooting</b>	<b>Chapter 7</b>
	Understanding the Status Indicators ..... 113
	Indications for Adapter Mode Operation ..... 114
	Indications for Tap Mode Operation ..... 116
	Viewing Option Module Diagnostic Items ..... 118
	Viewing and Clearing Events ..... 122
<b>Viewing Option Module Web Pages</b>	<b>Chapter 8</b>
	Enabling the Option Module Web Pages ..... 125
	Viewing Web Pages in Adapter Mode ..... 125
	Adapter Mode Process Display Pop-up Dialog Box ..... 128
	Adapter Mode TCP/IP Configuration Web Page ..... 129
	Adapter Mode Configure E-mail Notification Web Page ..... 130
	Adapter Mode Device Information Pages ..... 133
	Viewing Web Pages in Tap Mode ..... 136
<b>Specifications</b>	<b>Appendix A</b>
	Communication ..... 137
	Electrical ..... 138
	Mechanical ..... 138
	Environmental ..... 138
	Regulatory Compliance ..... 138
<b>Option Module Parameters</b>	<b>Appendix B</b>
	Parameter Types ..... 139
	About Parameter Numbers ..... 140
	How Parameters Are Organized ..... 140
	Parameters for Adapter Mode Operation ..... 140
	Parameters for Tap Mode Operation ..... 150

**EtherNet/IP Objects  
(Adapter mode only)****Appendix C**

Supported Data Types .....	153
Identity Object .....	154
Assembly Object .....	155
Register Object .....	156
PCCC Object .....	157
DPI Device Object .....	160
DPI Parameter Object .....	163
DPI Fault Object .....	169
DPI Alarm Object .....	171
DPI Diagnostic Object .....	173
DPI Time Object .....	175
Host DPI Parameter Object .....	177
TCP/IP Interface Object .....	183
Ethernet Link Object .....	185

**Logic Command/Status Words:  
PowerFlex 750-Series Drives****Appendix D**

Logic Command Word .....	187
Logic Status Word .....	188

**Glossary****Index**

## Notes:

This manual provides information about the 20-750-ENETR Dual-port EtherNet/IP Option Module for network communication and how to use the module with PowerFlex 750-Series drives.

### Conventions Used in This Manual

The following conventions are used throughout this manual:

- Parameter names are shown in the format *Device* **Parameter xx** - [\*] or *Host* **Parameter xx** - [\*]. The xx represents the parameter number. The \* represents the parameter name—for example, *Device* **Parameter 01** - [Operating Mode].
- The firmware revision number (FRN) is displayed as FRN X.xxx, where 'X' is the major revision number and 'xxx' is the minor revision number.
- For the screen captures in this manual, the following software was used:
  - RSLinx Classic software, version 2.52
  - RSLogix 5000 software, version 16.00 and, for Automatic Device Configuration information, version 20.00

Different versions of the software may differ in appearance and procedures.

### Rockwell Automation Support

Rockwell Automation offers support services worldwide, with over 75 sales and support offices, over 500 authorized distributors, and over 250 authorized systems integrators located through the United States alone. In addition, Rockwell Automation representatives are in every major country in the world.

#### Local Product Support

Contact your local Rockwell Automation representative for the following:

- Sales and order support
- Product technical training
- Warranty support
- Support service agreements

#### Technical Product Assistance

For technical assistance, please review the information in [Chapter 7](#), Troubleshooting, first. If you still have problems, then access the Allen-Bradley Technical Support website at <http://www.ab.com/support/abdrives> or contact Rockwell Automation.

## Additional Resources

These documents contain additional information concerning related products from Rockwell Automation.

Resource	Description
Network Communication Option Module Installation Instructions, publication <a href="#">750COM-IN002</a>	Information on the installation of PowerFlex® 750-Series Network Communication Modules.
EtherNet/IP Media Planning and Installation Manual, ODVA publication 148 <sup>(1)</sup>	Information on the planning, installation, and techniques used to implement an EtherNet/IP network.
EtherNet/IP Network Infrastructure Guidelines, ODVA publication 35 <sup>(1)</sup>	
Ethernet Design Considerations Reference Manual, publication <a href="#">ENET-RM002</a>	
EtherNet/IP Embedded Switch Technology - Linear and Device-level Ring Topologies, publication <a href="#">ENET-AP005</a>	
DriveExplorer website <a href="http://www.ab.com/drives/driveexplorer">http://www.ab.com/drives/driveexplorer</a> , and online help <sup>(2)</sup>	Information on using the DriveExplorer™ software tool.
DriveExecutive website <a href="http://www.ab.com/drives/drivetools">http://www.ab.com/drives/drivetools</a> , and online help <sup>(2)</sup>	Information on using the DriveExecutive™ software tool.
PowerFlex 750-Series Drive Installation Instructions, publication <a href="#">750-IN001</a>	Information on installing, programming, and technical data of PowerFlex 750-Series drives.
PowerFlex 750-Series Drive Programming Manual, publication <a href="#">750-PM001</a>	
PowerFlex 750-Series Drive Technical Data, publication <a href="#">750-TD001</a>	
PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6/-C6S HIM (Human Interface Module) User Manual, publication <a href="#">20HIM-UM001</a>	Information on the installation and use of PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIMs.
Getting Results with RSLinx Guide, publication <a href="#">LINX-GR001</a> , and online help <sup>(2)</sup>	Information on using RSLinx® Classic software.
RSLogix 5000 PIDE Autotuner Getting Results Guide, publication <a href="#">PIDE-GR001</a> , and online help <sup>(2)</sup>	Information on using the RSLogix™ 5000 software tool.
EtherNet/IP Modules in Logix5000 Control Systems User Manual, publication <a href="#">ENET-UM001</a>	Information on using the ControlLogix® 1756-EN2TR or 1756-EN3TR EtherNet/IP communication modules with your Logix5000 controller and communicating with various devices on the EtherNet/IP network.
Controller Examples for EtherNet/IP Network Communications with PowerFlex 750-Series Drives, publication 750COM-AT001	Information on using PLC-5®, SLC™ 500, and MicroLogix™ 1100/1400 controllers with PowerFlex 750-Series drives that are equipped with a 20-750-ENETR Dual-port EtherNet/IP option module or embedded EtherNet/IP adapter (PowerFlex 755 drive only).

(1) Use this link to the ODVA EtherNet/IP library: <http://odva.org/Home/ODVATECHNOLOGIES/EtherNetIP/EtherNetIPLibrary/tabid/76/Default.aspx>.

(2) The online help is installed with the software.

You can view or download publications at <http://www.rockwellautomation.com/literature>. To order paper copies of technical documentation, contact your local Allen-Bradley® distributor or Rockwell Automation sales representative.

To find your local Rockwell Automation distributor or sales representative, visit [www.rockwellautomation.com/locations](http://www.rockwellautomation.com/locations).

For information, such as firmware updates or answers to drive-related questions, go to the Drives Service & Support website at <http://www.ab.com/support/abdrives> and click the Downloads or Knowledgebase link.

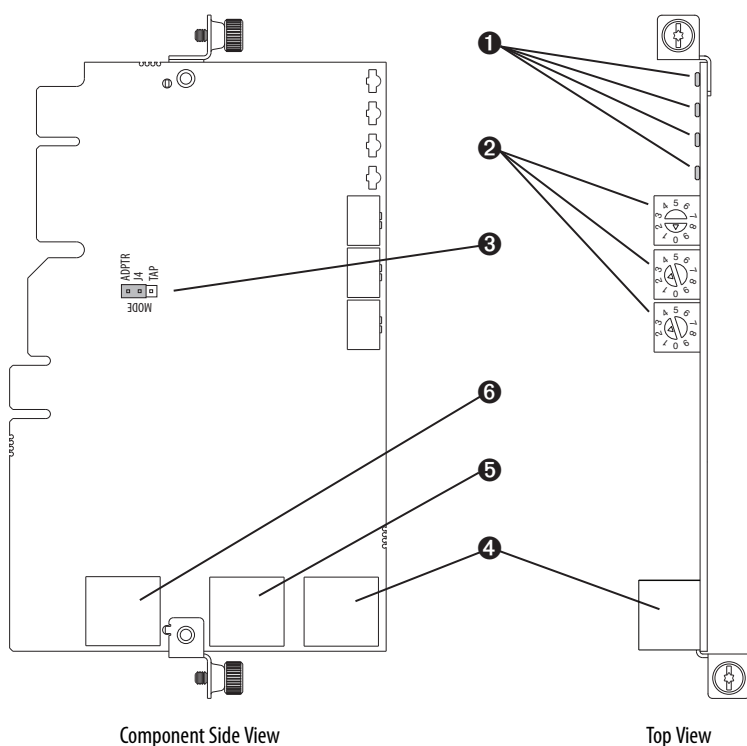


## Getting Started

The 20-750-ENETR Option Module is intended for installation into a PowerFlex 750-Series drive and is used for network communication.

Topic	Page
<a href="#">Components</a>	9
<a href="#">Features</a>	10
<a href="#">Option Module Operating Modes</a>	11
<a href="#">Compatible Products</a>	13
<a href="#">Required Equipment</a>	13
<a href="#">Safety Precautions</a>	14
<a href="#">Quick Start</a>	15

## Components



Item	Part	Description
1	Status Indicators	Four status indicators that indicate the status of the option module and network communication. See <a href="#">Chapter 7, Troubleshooting</a> .
2	Node Address Switches	Sets the network node address of the option module when <b>not</b> using: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>A BOOTP or DHCP server</li> <li>Option module parameters</li> </ul> See <a href="#">Setting the Node Address on page 20</a> .
3	Operating Mode Jumper (J4)	Selects the mode in which the option module operates. See <a href="#">Setting the Operating Mode on page 19</a> .
4	ENET1 Network Port	RJ-45 connector for the Ethernet network cable. The connector is CAT-5 compliant to ensure reliable data transfer on 100Base-TX Ethernet connections. Either port may be used in Adapter mode.
5	ENET2 Network Port	
6	ENET3 (DEVICE) Port (PowerFlex 755 only)	RJ-45 connector to connect the short Ethernet cable (provided with the option module) to the Ethernet port on the PowerFlex 755 drive embedded EtherNet/IP adapter. This is intended for 'Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP network' data transfer.

## Features

The features of the option module include the following:

- Adapter or Tap mode of operation that is selected by using the Operating Mode Jumper (J4). In Adapter mode (default), the option module operates as a network communication adapter supporting star, linear or device-level ring (DLR) network topologies. In Tap mode—only intended for use with PowerFlex 755 drives—the option module uses ENET3 (DEVICE) port as a connection point to transfer ‘Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP network’ data to the PowerFlex 755 drive’s embedded EtherNet/IP adapter.
- Industrial Ethernet switch, and ENET1 and ENET2 network ports that provide connections for EtherNet/IP star, linear, or device-level ring (DLR) network topologies.
- ENET3 (DEVICE) port—for use with only PowerFlex 755 drives—that supports the transfer of ‘Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP network’ data for that drive.
- Embedded electronic data sheet (EDS) files for PowerFlex 750-Series drives that eliminate the need to download an EDS file from the Rockwell Automation website. Instead, the EDS file is uploaded from the option module by using RSLinx software.
- Automatic Device Configuration (ADC), which is an ‘RSLogix 5000 software, version 20 or later, feature’ that supports the automatic download of configuration data. This occurs after the Logix controller establishes an EtherNet/IP network connection to a PowerFlex 750-Series drive (firmware revision 4.001 or later) and its associated peripherals.
- Captive screws to secure and ground the module to the drive.
- Switches to set a network node address before applying power to the drive—or you can disable the switches and use a BOOTP server, a Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol (DHCP) server, or option module parameters to configure the IP address.
- Compatibility with various configuration tools to configure the option module and host drive. The tools include the enhanced PowerFlex 7-Class HIM (catalog number 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S) on the drive, and drive-configuration software, such as DriveExplorer software, version 6.01 or later, or DriveExecutive software, version 5.01 or later.
- Status indicators that report the status of the option module and network communication. They are visible when the drive cover is removed.
- Parameter-configured 32-bit Datalinks in the I/O to meet application requirements (16 Datalinks to write data from the network to the drive, and 16 Datalinks to read data to the network from the drive).
- Explicit Messaging support.

- Master-Slave or Peer-to-Peer hierarchy that can be configured to transmit data to and from a controller or another PowerFlex 750-Series drive on the network by using another 20-750-ENETR option module or the embedded EtherNet/IP adapter in a PowerFlex 755 drive.
- Supports ‘Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP network’ operation (Tap mode only) for only the PowerFlex 755 drive, firmware revision 2.003 or later. For details to set up ‘Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP network’ operation, see Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP Network User Manual, publication [MOTION-UM003](#).

**TIP**

For best reliability in ‘Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP network’ applications, we recommend that you always use Rockwell Automation Cat5e shielded Ethernet cable.

- User-defined fault actions to determine how the option module and its connected host drive respond to the following:
  - I/O messaging communication disruptions (Comm Flt Action)
  - Controllers in Idle mode (Idle Flt Action)
  - Peer device communication disruptions (Peer Flt Action)
  - Explicit messaging disruptions for drive control via PCCC, the CIP Register Object or the CIP Assembly object (Msg Flt Action)
- Accessing parameters by their name or their number.
- Web pages, viewed by using a web browser, that show information about the option module, its host drive, and DPI devices connected to the drive. Depending on its selected operating mode (Adapter or Tap), the option module provides a unique set of web pages with different information.
- Configured e-mail messaging (Adapter mode only) to desired addresses when selected drive faults occur and/or are cleared, and/or when the option module takes a communication or idle fault action.
- Access to any PowerFlex drive and its connected peripherals on the network to which the option module is connected.

## Option Module Operating Modes

The option module can be operated in Adapter mode (default) or Tap mode. The Operating Mode Jumper J4 (item 3 in [Figure 1 on page 19](#)) is used to select the operating mode. If the jumper is missing, the option module operates in the Adapter mode.

### Adapter Mode (default)

In the Adapter mode, the option module operates as an EtherNet/IP network communication module. With its EtherNet/IP embedded switch technology and ENET1 and ENET2 network ports, the option module enables the drive to be

used in a linear or device-level ring (DLR) network topology. When using a star network topology, either the ENET1 or ENET2 network port may be used. In Adapter mode, the 'Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP network' functionality is not supported.

### Tap Mode (only with PowerFlex 755 drives)

In the Tap mode, the option module operates like a gateway and functions similar to the 1783-ETAP module. By connecting the supplied Ethernet cable between the option module's ENET3 network port and the embedded EtherNet/IP adapter port on the PowerFlex 755 drive, the option module enables the PowerFlex 755 drive to extend its I/O connection to a linear or device-level ring (DLR) network topology. This also enables 'Integrated Motion on the EtherNet/IP network' functionality supported by the PowerFlex 755 drive to be used with these topologies.

## Understanding Parameter Types

The option module has two types of parameters:

- *Device* parameters are used to configure the option module to operate on the network. *Device* parameters, when viewed with DriveExplorer or DriveExecutive software, appear below the 20-750-ENETR listing in the treeview in a separate Device Parameters folder. When viewed with the 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM, these parameters appear in the DEV PARAM folder.

---

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	Some <i>Device</i> parameters are not applicable when operating the option module in Adapter mode while others are not applicable in Tap mode. Therefore, these non-applicable parameters are labeled 'Reserved' in the Adapter and Tap mode operation parameter tables in <a href="#">Appendix B</a> .
------------------	---

---

- *Host* parameters are used to configure the option module Datalink transfer and various fault actions with the drive. *Host* parameters, when viewed with DriveExplorer or DriveExecutive software, appear below the 20-750-ENETR listing in the treeview in a separate Host Parameters folder. When viewed with the 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM, these parameters appear in the HOST PARAM folder.

---

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	When operating the option module in Tap mode, <i>Host</i> parameters are <b>not</b> supported.
------------------	--

---

## Compatible Products

At the time of publication, the option module is compatible with the following:

- PowerFlex 753 drives (all firmware revisions)
- PowerFlex 755 drives (firmware revision 1.010 or later) <sup>(1)</sup>

(1) When the option module is connected to an incompatible drive, its PORT status indicator will flash orange indicating that it is not compatible with the drive.

## Required Equipment

Some of the equipment that is required for use with the option module is shipped with the module, but some you must supply yourself.

### Equipment Shipped with the Option Module

When you unpack the option module, verify that the package includes the following:

- ☐ One 20-750-ENETR Dual-port EtherNet/IP Option Module
- ☐ One short Ethernet cable (spare part catalog number 1585J-M8CBJM-0M3; for Tap mode use only with PowerFlex 755 drives)
- ☐ One Network Communication Option Card Installation Instructions, publication [750COM-IN002](#)

### User-supplied Equipment

To install and configure the option module, you must supply the following:

- ☐ A small screwdriver
- ☐ Ethernet cable (for details, see the EtherNet/IP Media Planning and Installation Manual, ODVA publication 148 available on the ODVA website at <http://odva.org/Home/ODVATECHNOLOGIES/EtherNetIP/EtherNetIPLibrary/tabid/76/Default.aspx>)
- ☐ Configuration tool, such as the following:
  - PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM
  - DriveExplorer software, version 6.01 or later
  - DriveExecutive standalone software, version 5.01 or later, or bundled with the DriveTools SP suite, version 5.01 or later
  - BOOTP, version 2.1 or later, or DHCP Server for network setup only
- ☐ Controller configuration software, such as RSLogix 5000 software
- ☐ A computer connection to the EtherNet/IP network

## Safety Precautions

Please read the following safety precautions carefully.



**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or death exists. The PowerFlex drive may contain high voltages that can cause injury or death. Remove all power from the PowerFlex drive, and then verify power has been discharged before installing or removing the option module.



**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. Only personnel familiar with drive and power products and the associated machinery should plan or implement the installation, startup, configuration, and subsequent maintenance of the drive using the option module. Failure to comply may result in injury and/or equipment damage.



**ATTENTION:** Risk of equipment damage exists. The option module contains electrostatic discharge (ESD) sensitive parts that can be damaged if you do not follow ESD control procedures. Static control precautions are required when handling the option module. If you are unfamiliar with static control procedures, see Guarding Against Electrostatic Damage, publication [8000-4.5.2](#).



**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. If the option module is transmitting control I/O to the drive, the drive may fault when you reset the option module. Determine how your drive will respond before resetting the module.



**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. **Host Parameters 33 - [Comm Flt Action], 34 - [Idle Flt Action], 35 - [Peer Flt Action], and 36 - [Msg Flt Action]** let you determine the action of the option module and connected drive if I/O communication is disrupted, the controller is idle, Peer I/O is disrupted, or explicit messaging for drive control is disrupted. By default, these parameters fault the drive. You may configure these parameters so that the drive continues to run, however, precautions should be taken to verify that the settings of these parameters do not create a risk of injury or equipment damage. When commissioning the drive, verify that your system responds correctly to various situations (for example, a disconnected cable or a controller in idle state).



**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. When a system is configured for the first time, there may be unintended or incorrect machine motion. Disconnect the motor from the machine or process during initial system testing.



**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. The examples in this publication are intended solely for purposes of example. There are many variables and requirements with any application. Rockwell Automation does not assume responsibility or liability (to include intellectual property liability) for actual use of the examples shown in this publication.

## Quick Start

This section is provided to help experienced users quickly start using the option module in Adapter mode or Tap mode. If you are unsure how to complete a step, refer to the referenced chapter.

### Adapter Mode of Operation

Step	Action	See
1	Review the safety precautions for the option module.	Throughout this manual
2	Verify that the PowerFlex drive is properly installed.	PowerFlex 750-Series AC Drive Installation Instructions, publication <a href="#">750-IN001</a>
3	Set the option module IP address. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using the option module node address switches, set the IP address now and proceed with step 4. When using a DHCP or BOOTP server, or option module parameters instead to set the IP address, first perform step 3b and all of step 4. Then proceed with step 5.</li> <li>Verify that the PowerFlex drive is not powered.</li> </ol>	<a href="#">Chapter 2</a> , Installing the Option Module
4	Install the option module. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insert the option module in drive Port 4, 5, or 6. Use the captive crews to secure and ground the option module to the drive.</li> <li>Connect the option module to the network by using an Ethernet cable.</li> </ol>	Network Communication Option Card Installation Instructions, publication <a href="#">750COM-IN002</a> and <a href="#">Chapter 2</a> , Installing the Option Module
5	Apply power to the option module. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The option module receives power from the drive. Verify that the option module is installed correctly and then apply power to the drive. The status indicators should be green. If they flash red, there is a problem. See <a href="#">Chapter 7</a>, Troubleshooting.</li> <li>Configure and verify key drive parameters.</li> </ol>	<a href="#">Chapter 2</a> , Installing the Option Module
6	Configure the option module for your application. Set option module parameters for the following functions as required by your application: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address (only when not using option module node address switches)</li> <li>Data rate</li> <li>I/O configuration</li> <li>Master-Slave or Peer-to-Peer hierarchy</li> <li>Fault actions</li> <li>Web enable and features</li> </ul>	<a href="#">Chapter 3</a> , Configuring the Option Module
7	Configure the controller to communicate with the option module. Use a controller configuration tool such as RSLogix software to configure the master on the network to recognize the option module and drive.	<a href="#">Chapter 4</a> , Configuring the I/O
8	Create a ladder logic program. Use a controller configuration tool such as RSLogix software to create a ladder logic program that enables you to do the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Control the option module and connected drive by using I/O.</li> <li>Monitor or configure the drive by using Explicit messages.</li> </ul>	<a href="#">Chapter 5</a> , Using the I/O (Adapter mode only)  <a href="#">Chapter 6</a> , Using Explicit Messaging (Adapter mode only)

## Tap Mode of Operation (only with PowerFlex 755 drives)

Step	Action	See
1	Review the safety precautions for the option module.	Throughout this manual
2	Verify that the PowerFlex drive is properly installed.	PowerFlex 750-Series AC Drive Installation Instructions, publication <a href="#">750-IN001</a>
3	Set the option module IP address. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>When using the option module node address switches, set the IP address now and proceed with step 4. When using a DHCP server, BOOTP server, or option module parameters to set the IP address, first perform step 3b and all of step 4. Then proceed with step 5.</li> <li>Verify that the PowerFlex drive is not powered.</li> </ol>	<a href="#">Chapter 2</a> , Installing the Option Module
4	Install the option module. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Insert the option module in only PowerFlex 755 drive Port 4 or 5. Use the captive screws to secure and ground the option module to the drive.</li> <li>Connect the option module to the network by using an Ethernet cable.</li> </ol>	Network Communication Option Card Installation Instructions, publication <a href="#">750COM-IN002</a> and <a href="#">Chapter 2</a> , Installing the Option Module
5	Apply power to the option module. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>The option module receives power from the drive. Verify that the option module is installed correctly and then apply power to the drive. The status indicators should be green. If they flash red, there is a problem. See <a href="#">Chapter 7</a>, Troubleshooting.</li> <li>Configure and verify key drive parameters.</li> </ol>	<a href="#">Chapter 2</a> , Installing the Option Module
6	Configure the option module for your application. Set option module parameters for the following functions as required by your application: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address (only when not using option module node address switches)</li> <li>Data rate</li> <li>Web enable and features</li> </ul>	<a href="#">Chapter 3</a> , Configuring the Option Module
7	Set (or verify) the IP address for the embedded EtherNet/IP adapter in the PowerFlex 755 drive.	PowerFlex 755 Drive Embedded EtherNet/IP Adapter User Manual, publication <a href="#">750COM-UM001</a>



## Installing the Option Module

This chapter provides instructions for installing the option module in a PowerFlex 750-Series drive.

Topic	Page
<a href="#">Preparing for an Installation</a>	17
<a href="#">Setting the Operating Mode</a>	19
<a href="#">Setting the Node Address</a>	20
<a href="#">Connecting the Option Module to the Drive</a>	22
<a href="#">Connecting the Option Module to the Network</a>	23
<a href="#">Applying Power</a>	26
<a href="#">Commissioning the Option Module</a>	30

### Preparing for an Installation

Before installing the option module, do the following:

- Make sure the Ethernet switch is the correct type. A “managed” switch that supports IGMP snooping is usually recommended. An “unmanaged” switch can be used instead if RSLogix 5000 software, version 18.00 or later, is used and all devices on the network are configured for “unicast” I/O. For more details, see the following documents:
  - EtherNet/IP Media Planning and Installation Manual, ODVA publication 148
  - EtherNet/IP Network Infrastructure Guidelines, ODVA publication 35
  - Ethernet Design Considerations Reference Manual, publication [ENET-RM002](#)
- Understand IGMP Snooping/Ethernet Switches

The option module is a multicast device. In most situations, an IGMP snooping (managed) switch is required. If more than one or two EtherNet/IP option modules are connected to the switch, a managed switch is required—otherwise the drive may fault on a Net IO Timeout network loss. The option module, RSLogix 5000 software version 18.00 or later, and a ControlLogix or CompactLogix controller will support unicast. Unicast setup is required when adding the drive to the I/O. When all option modules are set up as unicast devices, then an IGMP snooping (managed) switch is not needed.

Much of EtherNet/IP implicit (I/O) messaging uses IP multicast to distribute I/O control data, which is consistent with the CIP producer/consumer model. Historically, most switches have treated multicast packets the same as broadcast packets. That is, all multicast packets are re-transmitted to all ports.

IGMP snooping constrains the flooding of multicast traffic by dynamically configuring switch ports so that multicast traffic is forwarded only to ports associated with a particular IP multicast group.

Switches that support IGMP snooping (managed switches) ‘learn’ which ports have devices that are part of a particular multicast group and only forward the multicast packets to the ports that are part of the multicast group.

Be careful as to what level of support a switch has of IGMP snooping. Some layer 2 switches that support IGMP snooping require a router (which could be a layer 3 switch) to send out IGMP polls to learn what devices are part of the multicast group. Some layer 2 switches can use IGMP snooping without a router sending polls. If your control system is a standalone network or is required to continue performing if the router is out of service, make sure the switch you are using supports IGMP snooping without a router being present.

- See [Appendix A](#) for the number of CIP connections supported by the option module.
- Verify that you have all required equipment. See [Required Equipment on page 13](#).



**ATTENTION:** Risk of equipment damage exists. The option module contains electrostatic discharge (ESD) sensitive parts that can be damaged if you do not follow ESD control procedures. Static control precautions are required when handling the option module. If you are unfamiliar with static control procedures, see Guarding Against Electrostatic Damage, publication [8000-4.5.2](#).

---

---

**IMPORTANT**

The option module has EtherNet/IP embedded switch technology, and ENET1 and ENET2 network ports to connect to a linear or device-level ring (DLR) network in a single subnet.

You cannot use ENET1 and ENET 2 network ports as two network interface cards connected to two different subnets.

---

## Setting the Operating Mode

The option module can be operated in Adapter mode (default) or Tap mode. For information about the operating modes, see [Option Module Operating Modes on page 11](#).

Before installing the option module, set its Operating Mode Jumper J4 ([Figure 1](#)) for the desired mode of operation.

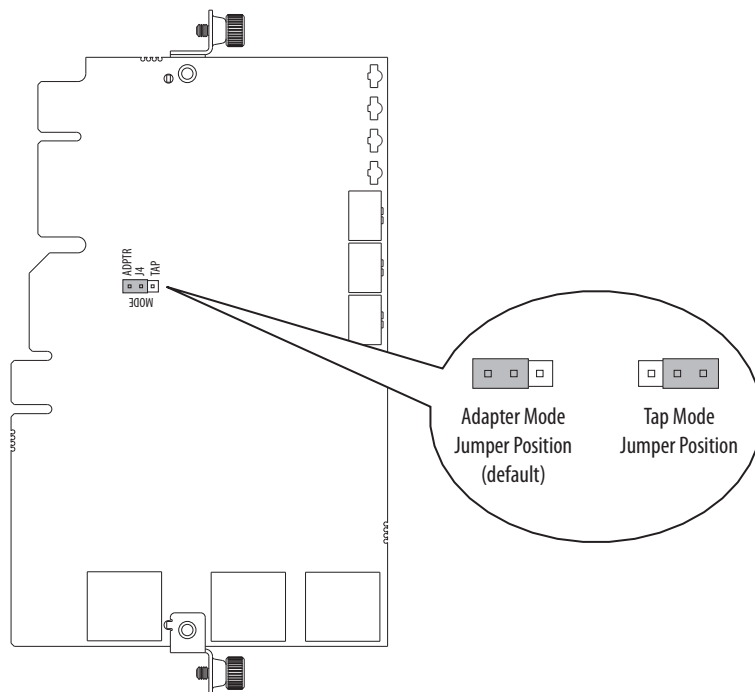
**TIP** If Operating Mode Jumper J4 is missing, the option module operates in the Adapter mode.

---

**IMPORTANT** A new jumper setting is recognized only when power is applied to the option module, or the module is reset. If you change a jumper setting, cycle power to the drive or reset the module to apply the change.

---

**Figure 1 - Setting Operating Mode Jumper J4**



## Setting the Node Address

There are four methods for configuring the option module node address:

- **Node Address Switches** — Use these switches when working on a simple, isolated network (for example, 192.168.1.xxx) that has other products with switches to set their IP addresses, does not need to be accessed from outside the network, and you prefer a simplified node addressing method. The three rotary switches are read when the drive powers up, and represent three decimal digits from top to bottom (see [Figure 2](#)). When set to a valid address (001...254), the option module will use that value as the lower octet of its IP address (192.168.1.xxx, where xxx = rotary switch settings), along with a subnet mask of 255.255.255.0, and a gateway address of 0.0.0.0 when switches are set to 001, or a gateway address of 192.168.1.1 when switches are set from 002...254. Also, the setting for *Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]* is automatically ignored.

See [Figure 2](#) and its accompanying table for all possible switch settings and their related descriptions.

---

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	When using the Node Address switches, set the network node address before power is applied because the option module uses the node address it detects when it first receives power.
------------------	---

---

- **Option Module Parameters** — Use option module parameters when you want more flexibility in setting up the network node address, or need to communicate outside the control network using a gateway. To use parameters as the source for the IP address, the Node Address switches must be set to a value other than 001...254 or 888, and *Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]* must be set to “1” (Parameters). The IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address will then come from the values set using the associated option module parameters. For details, see [Using Option Module Parameters on page 36](#).

---

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	If parameter values are invalid or the option module was not reset for the values to take effect, the node address is established by using DHCP.
------------------	--

---

- **BOOTP** — Use BOOTP when you want to configure a *temporary* IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address for the option module using a BOOTP server. To use BOOTP as the source for the IP address, the Node Address switches must be set to a value other than 001...254 or 888, and *Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]* must be set to “2” (BOOTP).

Note the option module’s hardware Ethernet Address (MAC) on the module’s data nameplate label located on the backside of the circuit board, which will be used in step 7 when configuring the BOOTP server (see [Using a BOOTP or DHCP Server on page 32](#) for details).

**TIP** If the PowerFlex 750-Series drive is connected to a Stratix 6000 or Stratix 8000 managed Ethernet switch and the drive is set for BOOTP mode, the “dynamic IP address assignment by port” (Stratix 6000) or “DHCP persistence” (Stratix 8000) feature will set the IP address for the drive. For more details, see the Stratix 6000 Ethernet Managed Switch User Manual, publication [1783-UM001](#) or the Stratix 8000 and Stratix 8300 Ethernet Managed Switches User Manual, publication [1783-UM003](#).

- **DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)** — Use DHCP, the default, when you want additional flexibility and ease-of-use compared to BOOTP in configuring the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address for the option module using a DHCP server. To use DHCP as the source for the IP address, the Node Address switches must be set to a value other than 001...254 or 888, and *Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]* must be set to “3” (DHCP).

---

**IMPORTANT** When the DHCP lease expires, the option module stops communicating on the network, requiring a power cycle or option module reset.

---

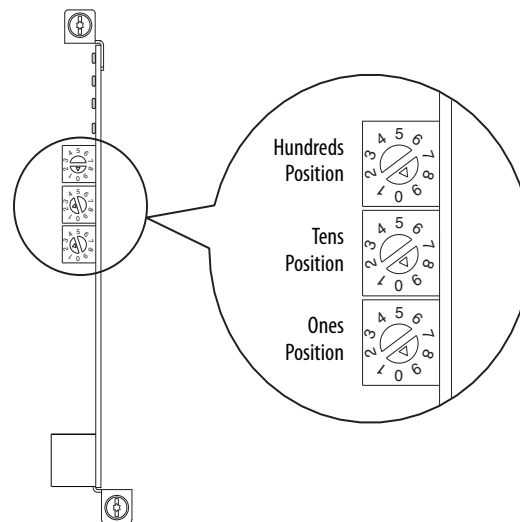
Note the option module’s hardware Ethernet Address (MAC) on the module’s data nameplate label on the backside of the circuit board, which will be used in step 7 when configuring the DHCP server (see [Using a BOOTP or DHCP Server on page 32](#) for details).

---

**IMPORTANT** Regardless of the method used to set the option module network node address, each node on the EtherNet/IP network must have a unique IP address. To change a node address, you must set the new value and then remove and reapply power to (or reset) the option module.

---

**Figure 2 - Setting the Node Address Switches**



Settings	Description
001...254	The option module will use the Node Address switch settings for the network node address (192.168.1.xxx, where xxx = rotary switch settings). The value stored in <i>Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]</i> is automatically ignored.

Settings	Description
888	Resets the option module network node address to factory defaults. Thereafter, the drive must be powered down, the Node Address switches must be set to a correct value (001...254), and then the drive must be powered up again to accept the new address.
Any other setting	Disables the Node Address switches, and requires using <i>Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]</i> to select the source for the option module's network node address: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1 = Parameters of the option module</li> <li>2 = BOOTP server</li> <li>3 = DHCP server (default)</li> </ul>

The Node Address switch settings can be verified by viewing Diagnostic Item number 73 ([page 120](#) or [page 122](#)) with a PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM, DriveExplorer software, or DriveExecutive software. Also, you can use *Device Parameter 06 - [Net Addr Src]*, a read-only parameter, to verify the selected setting for *Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]*.

## Connecting the Option Module to the Drive

---

**IMPORTANT** Remove power from the drive before installing the option module in the drive control pod.

---

The option module is connected to the drive differently depending on the mode in which the option module is operated.

### When Operating in Adapter Mode

Install the option module in the PowerFlex 750-Series drive control pod in Port 4, 5 or 6. For more installation details, see the Network Communication Option Card Installation Instructions, publication [750COM-IN002](#), provided with the option module.

---

**IMPORTANT** After inserting the option module into drive Port 4, 5 or 6, make sure to tighten the module screws to the pod mounting bracket to properly ground the module to the drive. Torque both screws to 0.45...0.67 N·m (4.0...6.0 lb·in).

---

### When Operating in Tap Mode (only with PowerFlex 755 drives)

Install the option module in the PowerFlex 755 drive control pod in only Port 4 or 5. (When operating in Tap mode, drive Port 6 cannot be used.) For more installation details, see the Network Communication Option Card Installation Instructions, publication [750COM-IN002](#), provided with the option module.

---

**IMPORTANT** After inserting the option module into PowerFlex 755 drive Port 4 or 5 only, make sure to tighten the module screws to the control pod bracket to properly ground the module to the drive. Torque both screws to 0.45...0.67 N·m (4.0...6.0 lb·in).

---

## Connecting the Option Module to the Network

The option module is connected to the network differently depending on the mode in which the option module is operated.

### When Operating in Adapter Mode



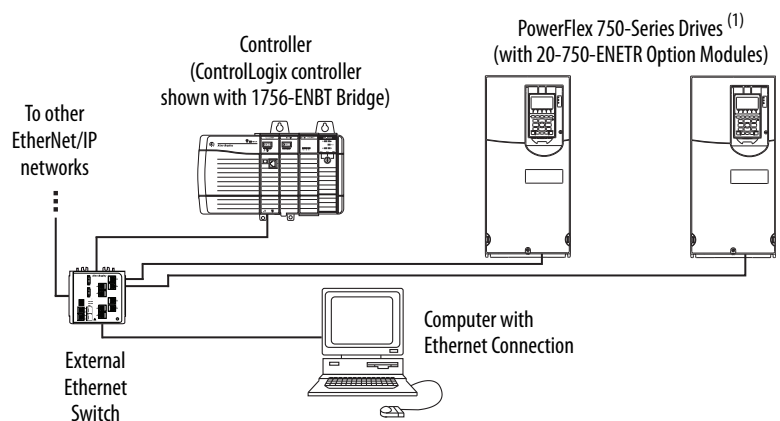
**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or death exists. The PowerFlex drive may contain high voltages that can cause injury or death. Remove power from the drive, and then verify power has been discharged before connecting the option module to the network.

1. Remove power from the drive.
2. Remove the drive cover and lift up the drive HIM bezel to its open position to access the drive control pod.
3. Use static control precautions.
4. Connect one end of the Ethernet cable to the network.

Examples of different EtherNet/IP network topologies are shown in [Figure 3](#), [Figure 4](#), and [Figure 5](#). For information about linear and device-level ring (DLR) topologies, see EtherNet/IP Embedded Switch Technology, publication [ENET-AP005](#).

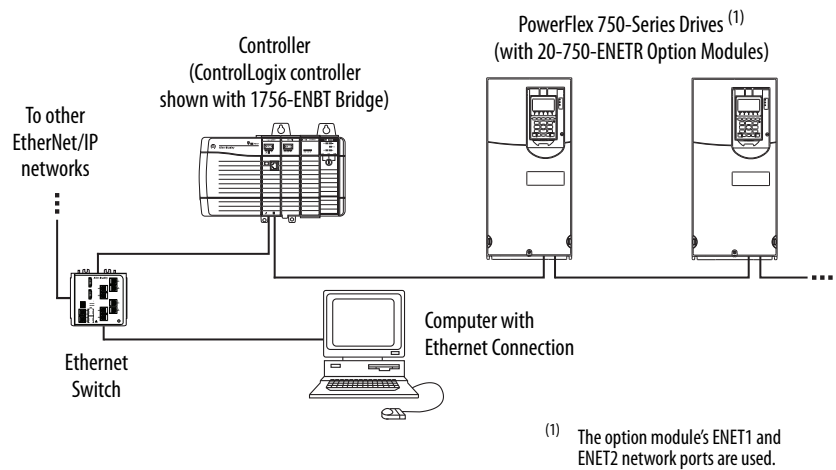
**IMPORTANT** The option module has EtherNet/IP embedded switch technology, and ENET1 and ENET2 network ports to connect to a linear or device-level ring (DLR) network in a single subnet. You cannot use ENET1 and ENET 2 network ports as two network interface cards connected to two different subnets.

**Figure 3 - Connecting the Ethernet Cable in a Star Topology Network**

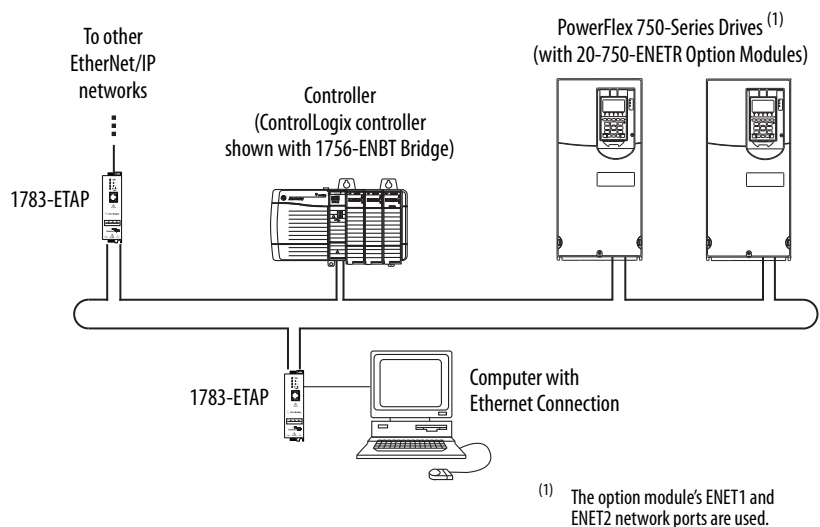


<sup>(1)</sup> The ethernet cable may be connected to the option module's ENET1 or ENET 2 network port.

**Figure 4 - Connecting the Ethernet Cable in a Linear Topology Network**



**Figure 5 - Connecting the Ethernet Cable in a DLR Topology Network**



5. Depending on the network topology, do one of the following:

- Star Network Topology—Route the other end of the Ethernet cable from the network through the bottom of the drive, and insert its cable plug into the option module's ENET1 or ENET2 network port.
- Linear or DLR Network Topology—Route the other end of the Ethernet cable from the network through the bottom of the first drive, and insert its cable plug into the option module ENET1 network port. To connect to the second drive, attach another Ethernet cable between the first drive's option module ENET2 network port and the second drive's option module ENET1 network port. To connect additional drives, repeat these daisy-chain connections in the same way.



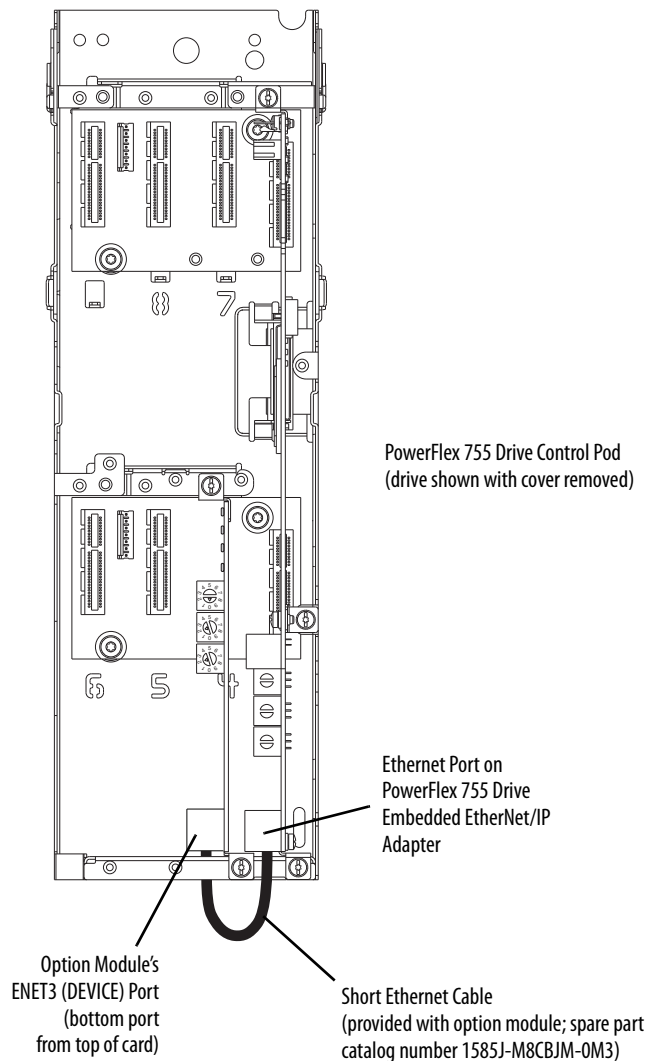
## When Operating in Tap Mode (only PowerFlex 755 drives)



**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or death exists. The PowerFlex drive may contain high voltages that can cause injury or death. Remove power from the drive, and then verify power has been discharged before connecting the option module to the network.

1. Remove power from the drive.
2. Remove the drive cover and lift up the drive HIM bezel to its open position to access the drive control pod.
3. Use static control precautions.
4. Connect the short Ethernet cable (provided with the option module) between the option module's ENET3 (DEVICE) port and the Ethernet port on the PowerFlex 755 drive's embedded EtherNet/IP adapter (see [Figure 6](#)). (ENET1 and ENET2 ports are used for linear or DLR network topology as shown in [Figure 4](#) or [Figure 5](#).)

**Figure 6 - Connecting the Short Ethernet Cable for Tap Mode of Operation**



## Applying Power



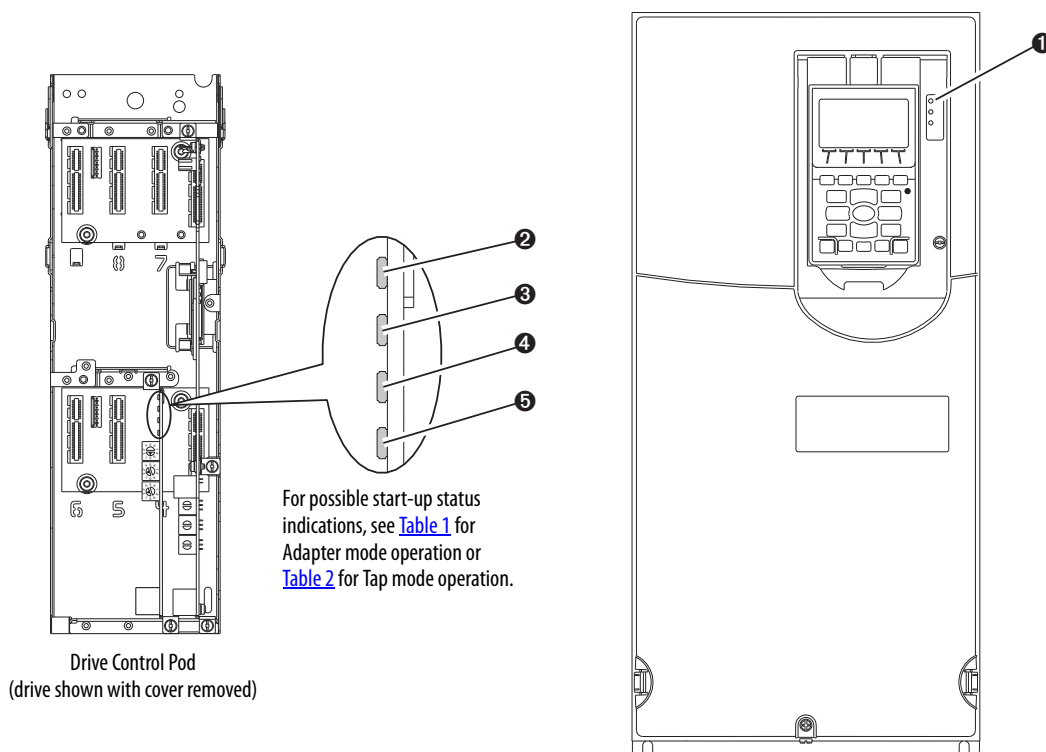
**ATTENTION:** Risk of equipment damage, injury, or death exists. Unpredictable operation may occur if you fail to verify that parameter settings are compatible with your application. Verify that settings are compatible with your application before applying power to the drive.

Apply power to the drive. The option module receives its power from the drive. When you apply power to the option module for the first time, its topmost status indicator ('PORT' for Adapter mode or 'OK' for Tap mode) should be steady green or flashing green after an initialization. If it is red, there is a problem. See [Chapter 7](#), Troubleshooting.

## Start-Up Status Indications

After power has been applied, the drive STS (status) indicator can be viewed on the front of the drive and the option module status indicators can be viewed with the drive cover open or removed ([Figure 7](#)). The indicators operate differently in Adapter mode than Tap mode. Depending on the operating mode, possible start-up status indications are shown in [Table 1](#) or [Table 2](#) respectively.

**Figure 7 - Drive and Option Module Status Indicators**



**Table 1 - Adapter Mode – Drive and Option Module Start-Up Status Indications**

Item	Name	Color	State	Description
Drive STS Indicator				
❶	STS (Status)	Green	Flashing	Drive ready but not running, and no faults are present.
			Steady	Drive running, no faults are present.
		Yellow	Flashing	When running, a type 2 (non-configurable) alarm condition exists – drive continues to run. When stopped, a start inhibit condition exists and the drive cannot be started (see drive parameter 933 - [Start Inhibits]).
			Steady	A type 1 (user configurable) alarm condition exists, but the drive continues to run.
		Red	Flashing	A major fault has occurred. Drive will stop. Drive cannot be started until fault condition is cleared.
			Steady	A non-resettable fault has occurred.
		Red/ Yellow	Flashing Alternately	A minor fault has occurred. Use drive parameter 950 - [Minor Flt Config] to enable. If not enabled, acts like a major fault. When running, the drive continues to run. System is brought to a stop under system control. The fault must be cleared to continue.
		Yellow/ Green	Flashing Alternately	When running, a type 1 alarm exists.
		Green/Red	Flashing Alternately	Drive is updating.
Option Module Status Indicators—Adapter Mode				
❷	PORT	Green	Flashing	Normal operation. The option module is establishing an I/O connection to the drive. It will turn steady green or red.
			Steady	Normal operation. The option module is properly connected and communicating with the drive.
❸	MOD	Green	Flashing	Normal operation. The option module is operating but is not transferring I/O data to a controller.
			Steady	Normal operation. The option module is operating and transferring I/O data to a controller.
❹	NET A	Unlit	Off	Normal operation. DHCP is enabled or a valid IP address is not set.
		Green	Flashing	Normal operation. DHCP is disabled, the option module is properly connected, has an IP address, and is connected to an EtherNet/IP network—but does not have an I/O connection.
			Steady	Normal operation. The option module is properly connected and communicating on the network to a controller.
❺	NET B	Unlit	Off	Normal operation. The option module is properly connected, but is idle.
		Green	Flashing	Normal operation. The option module is properly connected, DHCP is enabled, and the option module is transmitting on the network.

After verifying correct operation, swing down the drive HIM bezel to its closed position and install the drive cover. For more details on status indicator operation, see [page 114](#) and [page 115](#).

**Table 2 - Tap Mode – PowerFlex 755 Drive and Option Module Start-Up Status Indications**

Item	Name	Color	State	Description
Drive STS Indicator				
❶	STS (Status)	Green	Flashing	Drive ready but not running, and no faults are present.
			Steady	Drive running, no faults are present.
		Yellow	Flashing	When running, a type 2 (non-configurable) alarm condition exists – drive continues to run. When stopped, a start inhibit condition exists and the drive cannot be started (see drive parameter 933 - [Start Inhibits]).
			Steady	A type 1 (user configurable) alarm condition exists, but the drive continues to run.
		Red	Flashing	A major fault has occurred. Drive will stop. Drive cannot be started until fault condition is cleared.
			Steady	A non-resettable fault has occurred.
		Red/ Yellow	Flashing Alternately	A minor fault has occurred. Use drive parameter 950 - [Minor Flt Config] to enable. If not enabled, acts like a major fault. When running, the drive continues to run. System is brought to a stop under system control. The fault must be cleared to continue.
			Yellow/ Green	Flashing Alternately
		Green/Red	Flashing Alternately	Drive is updating.
Option Module Status Indicators—Tap Mode				
❷	OK	Green	Flashing	Normal operation. The option module is establishing DPI communication with the drive. It will turn steady green or red.
			Steady	Normal operation. The option module has established DPI communication with the drive.
❸ ❹ ❺	LINK 1	Unlit	Off	The option module is not properly connected to the network.
	LINK 2	Green	Flashing	Normal operation. There is a 100 Mbps network link, with activity.
			Steady	Normal operation. There is a 100 Mbps network link, no activity.
	LINK 3	Yellow	Flashing	Normal operation. There is a 10 Mbps network link, with activity.
			Steady	Normal operation. There is a 10 Mbps network link, no activity.

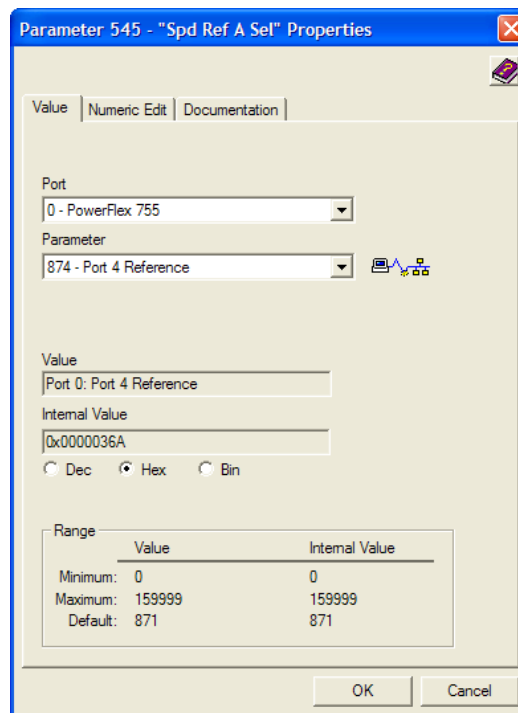
After verifying correct operation, swing down the drive HIM bezel to its closed position and install the drive cover. For more details on status indicator operation, see [page 114](#) or [page 116](#).

## Configuring and Verifying Key Drive Parameters

The PowerFlex 750-Series drive can be separately configured for the control and Reference functions in various combinations. For example, you could set the drive to have its control come from a peripheral or terminal block with the Reference coming from the network. Or you could set the drive to have its control come from the network with the Reference coming from another peripheral or terminal block. Or you could set the drive to have both its control and Reference come from the network.

The following steps in this section assume that the drive will receive the Logic Command and Reference from the network.

1. Verify that drive Parameter 301 - [Access Level] is set to “1” (Advanced) or “2” (Expert) to access the required parameters in this procedure.
2. Use drive Parameter 545 - [Speed Ref A Sel] to set the drive speed Reference:
  - a. Set the Port field to “0” as shown below.



- b. Set the Parameter field to point to the port (slot) in which the option module is installed (for this example, Port 4 Reference).

The number “874” in the Parameter field of the example dialog box above is the parameter in the drive that points to the port.

3. Verify that drive Parameter 930 - [Speed Ref Source] is reporting that the source of the Reference to the drive (Port 0) is the port in which the option module is installed (for this example, Port 4 Reference).

This ensures that any Reference commanded from the network can be monitored by using drive Parameter 002 - [Commanded SpdRef]. If a

problem occurs, this verification step provides the diagnostic capability to determine whether the drive/option module or the network is the cause.

4. If hard-wired discrete digital inputs are not used to control the drive, verify that all unused digital input drive parameters are set to “0” (Not Used).

## Commissioning the Option Module

To commission the option module, you must set a unique network node address. See the [Glossary](#) for details about IP addresses. When using the Node Address switches, see [Setting the Node Address on page 20](#) for details. When not using these switches, a BOOTP or DHCP server or option module parameters can be used to set the node address after connecting the option module to the network and applying power to the drive.

By default, the option module is configured so that you must set the node address using a DHCP server. For details, see [Using a BOOTP or DHCP Server on page 32](#). To set the node address using option module parameters, see [Using Option Module Parameters on page 36](#).

---

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	New settings for some option module parameters (for example, <i>Device Parameters 07 - [IP Addr Cfg 1]</i> through <i>10 - [IP Addr Cfg 4]</i> ) are recognized only when power is applied to the option module or it is reset. After you change parameter settings, cycle power or reset the option module.
------------------	--

---

## Configuring the Option Module

This chapter provides instructions and information for setting the parameters to configure the option module.

Topic	Page
<a href="#">Configuration Tools</a>	31
<a href="#">Using the PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM to Access Parameters</a>	32
<a href="#">Setting the Option Module Node Address</a>	32
<a href="#">Setting the Data Rate</a>	38
<a href="#">Selecting Master-Slave or Peer-to-Peer Hierarchy (Adapter mode only)</a>	39
<a href="#">Setting a Fault Action (Adapter mode only)</a>	46
<a href="#">Setting Web Page Access</a>	48
<a href="#">Resetting the Option Module</a>	49
<a href="#">Restoring Option Module Parameters to Factory Defaults</a>	50
<a href="#">Viewing the Option Module Status Using Parameters</a>	51
<a href="#">Updating the Option Module Firmware</a>	52

For a list of parameters, see [Appendix B](#), Option Module Parameters. For definitions of terms in this chapter, see the [Glossary](#).

### Configuration Tools

The option module stores parameters and other information in its own nonvolatile storage (NVS) memory. You must, therefore, access the option module to view and edit its parameters. The following tools can be used to access the option module parameters.

Tool	See
PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM	<a href="#">page 32</a>
BOOTP Server or DHCP server	<a href="#">page 32</a>
DriveExplorer Software, version 6.01 or later	<a href="http://www.ab.com/drives/driveexplorer">http://www.ab.com/drives/driveexplorer</a> , or DriveExplorer online help (installed with the software)
DriveExecutive Software, version 5.01 or later	<a href="http://www.ab.com/drives/drivetools">http://www.ab.com/drives/drivetools</a> , or DriveExecutive online help (installed with the software)



---

**IMPORTANT** For the HIM screens shown throughout this chapter, the option module was installed in drive Port 4. If your option module is installed in a different drive port, that port would appear instead of Port 4.

---

## Using the PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM to Access Parameters

If your drive has an enhanced PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM, it can be used to access parameters in the option module.

1. Display the Status screen, which is shown on HIM powerup.
2. Use the  or  key to scroll to the Port in which the option module is installed.
3. Press the PAR# *soft key* to display the Jump to Param # entry pop-up box.
4. Use the numeric keys to enter the desired parameter number, or use the ▲ or ▼ *soft key* to scroll to the desired parameter number.

For details on viewing and editing parameters, see the PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6/-C6S HIM (Human Interface Module) User Manual, publication [20HIM-UM001](#).

## Setting the Option Module Node Address

When the Node Address switches ([Figure 2 on page 21](#)) are set to a value other than 001...254 or 888, **Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]** determines the source for the option module node address. By default, the Node Address switches are set to 999 and **Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]** is set to “3” (DHCP). This combination selects a DHCP server as the source for the node address. To use a BOOTP or DHCP server to set the node address, see the subsection below. To use option module parameters, see [Using Option Module Parameters on page 36](#).

### Using a BOOTP or DHCP Server

#### TIP

If the PowerFlex 750-Series drive is connected to a Stratix 6000 or Stratix 8000 managed Ethernet switch and the drive is set for BOOTP mode, the ‘dynamic IP address assignment by port’ (Stratix 6000) or ‘DHCP persistence’ (Stratix 8000) feature will set the IP address for the drive. For more details, see the Stratix 6000 Ethernet Managed Switch User Manual, publication [1783-UM001](#), or the Stratix 8000 and Stratix 8300 Ethernet Managed Switches User Manual, publication [1783-UM003](#).

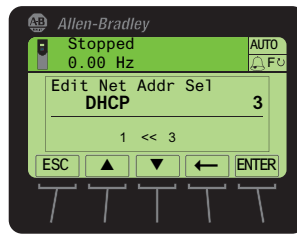
There is a variety of BOOTP or DHCP servers available. The instructions below use Rockwell Automation’s BOOTP/DHCP Server, version 2.3 or later, a *free* standalone program that incorporates the functionality of standard BOOTP and DHCP utilities with a graphical interface. It is available from [www.ab.com/networks/bootp.html](http://www.ab.com/networks/bootp.html). See the Readme file and online Help for directions and more information.

#### TIP

If you prefer to configure the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address using option module parameters, set **Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]** to “1” (Parameters). Then use the appropriate option module parameters. For details, see [Using Option Module Parameters on page 36](#).



1. Depending on the type of server (BOOTP or DHCP) being used, set **Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]** to either “2” (BOOTP) or “3” (DHCP) respectively.



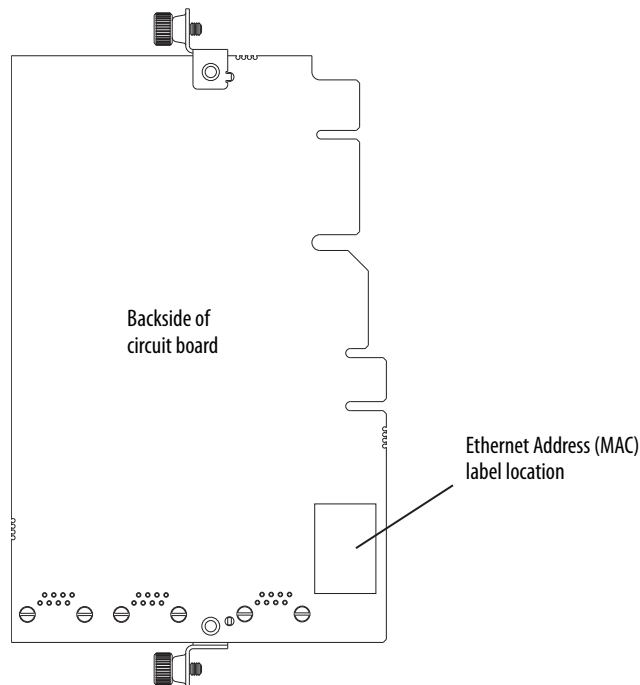
Value	Setting
1	Parameters
2	BOOTP
3	DHCP (default)

2. Note the option module's hardware Ethernet Address (MAC), which will be used in step 7.

There are two ways to do this:

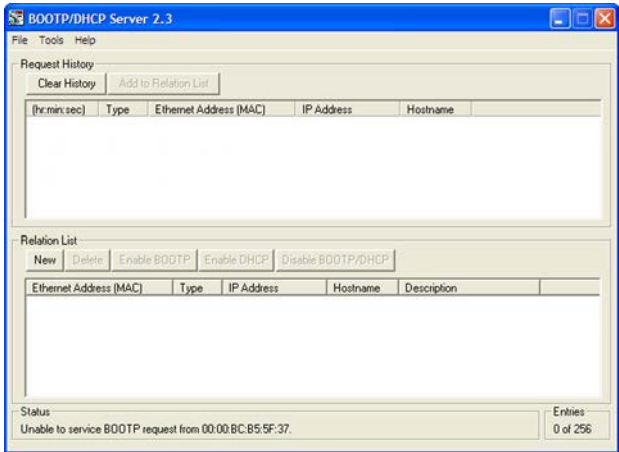
- Locate the option module's hardware Ethernet Address (MAC) on the module's product data nameplate label ([Figure 8](#)) located on the backside of the circuit board.

**Figure 8 - Option Module Hardware Address Label Location**



- Use the HIM to scroll to the drive Port in which the option module is installed and access the option module's DIAGNOSTIC folder screen. Then scroll to Diagnostic Items 49...54 (HW Addr 1...6) to view the option module's hardware Ethernet Address (MAC).
3. On a computer connected to the EtherNet/IP network, start the BOOTP/DHCP software.

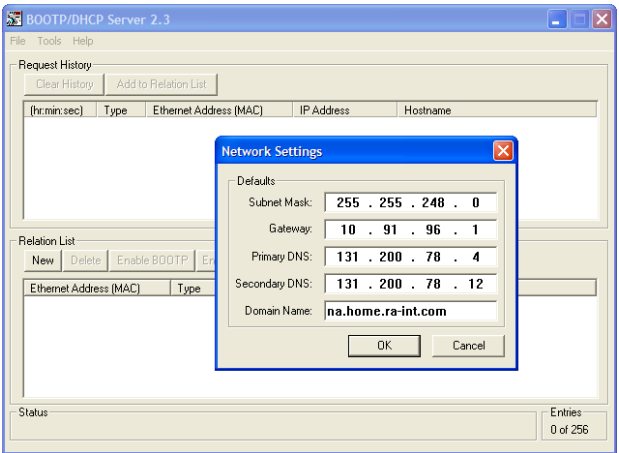
The BOOTP/DHCP Server dialog box appears.



To properly configure devices on the EtherNet/IP network, you must configure settings in the BOOTP/DHCP software to match the network.

- 4. From the Tools menu, choose Network Settings.

The Network Settings dialog box opens.



- 5. Edit the following:

Box	Type
Subnet Mask <sup>(1)</sup>	The subnet mask for the option module's network.
Gateway <sup>(1)</sup>	The IP address of the gateway device on the option module's network.
Primary DNS	The address of the primary DNS server to be used on the local end of the link for negotiating with remote devices.
Secondary DNS	Optional—the address of the secondary DNS server to be used on the local end of the link for negotiating with remote devices when the primary DNS server is unavailable.
Domain Name	The text name corresponding to the numeric IP address that was assigned to the server that controls the network.

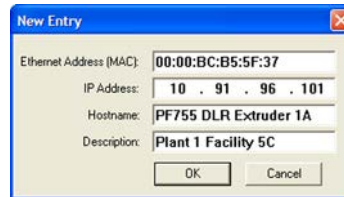
(1) For definitions of these terms, see the [Glossary](#).

- 6. Click OK to apply the settings.

Devices on the network issuing BOOTP/DHCP requests appear in the BOOTP/DHCP Request History list.

- In the BOOTP/DHCP Request History list, either double-click the option module's Ethernet Address (MAC) noted in step 2, or click New in the Relation List.

The New Entry dialog box appears. In the first instance, the Ethernet Address (MAC) is automatically entered. In the latter instance, it must be manually entered.



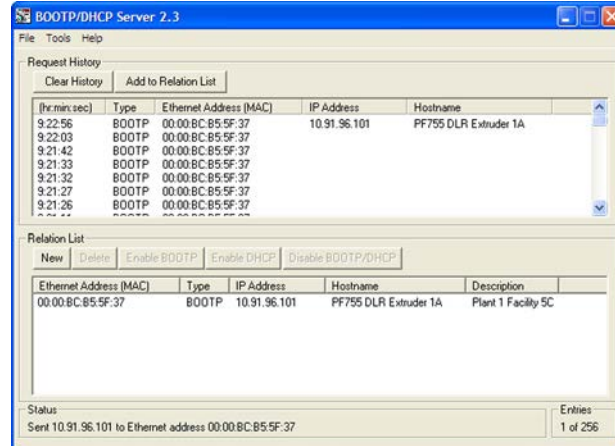
- Edit the following:

Box	Type
IP Address <sup>(1)</sup>	A unique IP address for the option module
Host Name	Optional
Description	Optional

(1) For definition of this term, see the [Glossary](#).

- Click OK to apply the settings.

The option module appears in the Relation List with the new settings.



- To permanently assign this configuration to the option module, select the device in the Relation List and click Disable BOOTP/DHCP.

When power is cycled on the option module, it will use the configuration you assigned it and not issue new BOOTP/DHCP requests.

**TIP** To enable BOOTP or DHCP for an option module that has had BOOTP/DHCP disabled, first select the option module in the Relation List. Then, depending on the type of server, click Enable BOOTP or Enable DHCP and, lastly, reset the option module or power cycle the drive.

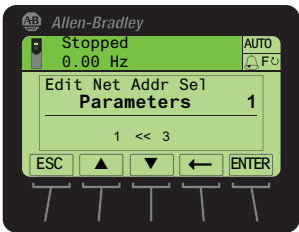
- From the File menu, choose Save to save the Relation List.

## Using Option Module Parameters

By default, the option module is configured to use a DHCP server as the source for the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address for the option module. To use option module parameters instead, you must first change the source for the node address to “Parameters” and then set the associated option module parameters as described in the following subsections.

### Changing the Source for the Node Address

1. Verify that the Node Address switches ([Figure 2 on page 21](#)) are set to any value other than 001...254 or 888. The default setting is 999.
2. Set the value of *Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]* to “1” (Parameters).

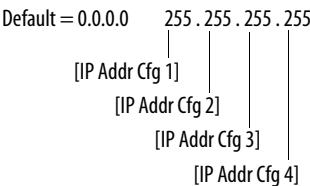
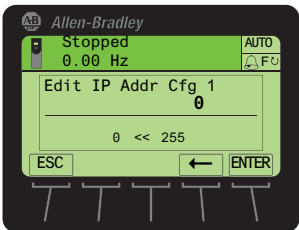


Value	Setting
1	Parameters
2	BOOTP
3	DHCP (default)

3. Reset the option module; see [Resetting the Option Module on page 49](#).
4. Perform the steps in the following subsections to set the IP address, subnet mask, and gateway address using the option module parameters.

### Setting the IP Address

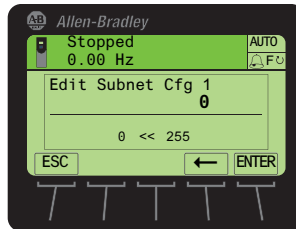
1. Verify that *Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]* is set to “1” (Parameters).
2. Set the value of *Device Parameters 07 - [IP Addr Cfg 1]* through **10 - [IP Addr Cfg 4]** to a unique IP address.



3. Reset the option module; see [Resetting the Option Module on page 49](#).
- The NET A status indicator will be steady green or flashing green if the IP address is correctly configured.

### Setting the Subnet Mask

1. Verify that *Device Parameter 05* - [Net Addr Sel] is set to "1" (Parameters).
2. Set the value of *Device Parameters 11* - [Subnet Cfg 1] through **14** - [Subnet Cfg 4] to the desired value for the subnet mask.



Default = 0.0.0.0    255 . 255 . 255 . 255

[Subnet Cfg 1]    |    |    |    |

[Subnet Cfg 2]    |    |    |    |

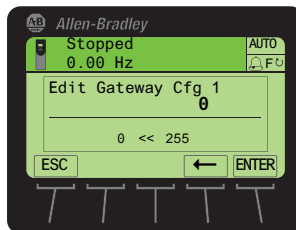
[Subnet Cfg 3]    |    |    |    |

[Subnet Cfg 4]    |    |    |    |

3. Reset the option module; see [Resetting the Option Module on page 49](#).

### Setting the Gateway Address

1. Verify that *Device Parameter 05* - [Net Addr Sel] is set to "1" (Parameters).
2. Set the value of *Device Parameters 15* - [Gateway Cfg 1] through **18** - [Gateway Cfg 4] to the IP address of the gateway device.



Default = 0.0.0.0    255 . 255 . 255 . 255

[Gateway Cfg 1]    |    |    |    |

[Gateway Cfg 2]    |    |    |    |

[Gateway Cfg 3]    |    |    |    |

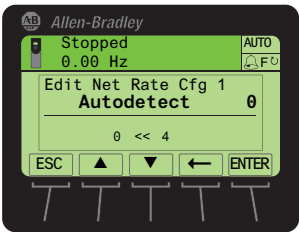
[Gateway Cfg 4]    |    |    |    |

3. Reset the option module; see [Resetting the Option Module on page 49](#).

## Setting the Data Rate

By default, the option module is set to autodetect, so it automatically detects the data rate and duplex setting used on the network. If you need to set a specific data rate and duplex setting, the value of *Device Parameter 19* - [Net Rate Cfg 1] determines the Ethernet data rate and duplex setting that will be used to communicate on the option module's ENET1 network port. For definitions of data rate and duplex, see the [Glossary](#).

1. Set the value of *Device Parameter 19* - [Net Rate Cfg 1] to the data rate at which your network is operating.



Value	Data Rate
0	Autodetect (default)
1	10 Mbps Full
2	10 Mbps Half
3	100 Mbps Full
4	100 Mbps Half

**TIP**      Auto detection of baud rate and duplex works properly only if the device (usually a switch) on the other end of the cable is also set to automatically detect the baud rate/duplex. If one device has the baud rate/duplex hard-coded, the other device must be hard-coded to the same settings.

If the option module's ENET2 network port will be used to connect another drive in a linear or DLR network topology, set the value of *Device Parameter 21* - [Net Rate Cfg 2] to the appropriate data rate.

2. Reset the option module; see [Resetting the Option Module on page 49](#).

## Selecting Master-Slave or Peer-to-Peer Hierarchy (Adapter mode only)

This procedure is only required if Datalinks are used to write or read data of the drive or its connected peripherals. A hierarchy determines the type of device with which the option module exchanges data. In a Master-Slave hierarchy, the option module exchanges data with a master, such as a scanner or bridge. In a Peer-to-Peer hierarchy, the option module exchanges data with EtherNet/IP Option Modules in other PowerFlex 750-Series drives.

For both Master-Slave and Peer-to-Peer hierarchies, the devices exchanging data must be on the same IP subnet. See “IP Addresses” in the [Glossary](#) for information about IP subnets.

### Setting a Master-Slave Hierarchy

#### *Enabling Datalinks To Write Data*

The controller output image (controller outputs-to-drive) can have 0 to 16 additional 32-bit parameters (Datalinks). They are configured using *Host Parameters 01 - [DL From Net 01]* through **Parameter 16 - [DL From Net 16]**. The number of Datalinks actively used is controlled by the connection size in the controller. See the respective controller example sections in [Chapter 4](#) for more information on setting the connection size.

---

**IMPORTANT** Always use the Datalink parameters in consecutive numerical order, starting with the first parameter. For example, use *Host Parameters 01, 02, and 03* to configure three Datalinks to write data. Otherwise, the network I/O connection will be larger than necessary, which needlessly increases controller response time and memory usage.

---

**TIP** When using a ControlLogix controller and an RSLogix 5000 drive Add-on Profile, version 16.00 or later, there is no need to configure Datalink parameters at this time. They will be assigned when configuring the RSLogix 5000 drive Add-on Profile (see [Adding the Drive/Option Module to the I/O Configuration on page 58](#)).

When using a ControlLogix controller and the Generic Profile, configure the Datalink parameters now as described in this section.

*Host Parameters 01 - [DL From Net 01]* through **16 - [DL From Net 16]** control which parameters in the drive, option module, or any other connected peripheral receive the values from the network. The PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM, DriveExplorer software, or DriveExecutive software can be used to select the drive or peripheral by port number and the parameter by name. As an alternate method, the parameter value can be set manually by number using this formula:

$$\text{From Net Parameter Value} = (10000 * \text{port number}) + (\text{Destination Parameter Number})$$

For example, suppose you want to use *Host Parameter 01 - [DL From Net 01]* to write to Parameter 03 of an optional encoder module plugged into drive Port 5.

Using the formula, the value for *Host Parameter 01* - [DL From Net 01] would be  $(10000 * 5) + (3) = 50003$ .

Follow these steps to enable Datalinks to write data.

1. Set the values of only the required number of contiguous controller-to-drive Datalinks needed to write data to the drive and that are to be included in the network I/O connection.
2. Reset the option module; see [Resetting the Option Module on page 49](#).
3. Since the Logic Command and Reference is always used in the option module, configure the parameters in the drive to accept the Logic Command and Reference from the option module. When using the controller for speed reference via the option module, set two fields in drive Parameter 545 - [Speed Ref A Sel]:
  - a. Set the Port field for the drive (for example, 0 - PowerFlex 755).
  - b. Set the Parameter field to point to the drive port in which the option module is installed (for this example, Port 4 Reference).

Also, verify that the mask parameters in the drive (for example, Parameter 324 - [Logic Mask]) are configured to receive the desired logic from the option module. See the drive documentation for details.

After the above steps are complete, the option module is ready to receive input data and transfer status data to the master (controller). Next, configure the controller to recognize and transmit I/O to the option module. See [Chapter 4](#), Configuring the I/O.

#### *Enabling Datalinks To Read Data*

The controller input image (drive-to-controller inputs) can have 0 to 16 additional 32-bit parameters (Datalinks). They are configured using *Host Parameters 17* - [DL To Net 01] through *32* - [DL To Net 16]. The number of Datalinks actively used is controlled by the connection size in the controller. See the respective controller example sections in [Chapter 4](#) for more information on setting the connection size.

---

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	Always use the Datalink parameters in consecutive numerical order, starting with the first parameter. For example, use <i>Host Parameters 17, 18, 19, 20, and 21</i> to configure five Datalinks to read data. Otherwise, the network I/O connection will be larger than necessary, which needlessly increases controller response time and memory usage.
------------------	---

---

<b>TIP</b>	When using a ControlLogix controller and an RSLogix 5000 drive Add-on Profile, version 16.00 or later, there is no need to configure Datalink parameters at this time. They will be assigned when configuring the RSLogix 5000 drive Add-on Profile (see <a href="#">Adding the Drive/Option Module to the I/O Configuration on page 58</a> ).
------------	--



When using a ControlLogix controller and the Generic Profile, configure the Datalink parameters now as described in this section.

**Host Parameters 17 - [DL To Net 01]** through **32 - [DL To Net 16]** configure which parameters in the drive, option module, or any other connected peripheral send the values to the network. The PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM, DriveExplorer software, or DriveExecutive software can be used to select the drive or peripheral by port number and the parameter by name. As an alternate method, the parameter value can be set manually by number using this formula:

$$\text{To Net Parameter Value} = (10000 * \text{Port Number}) + (\text{Origination Parameter Number})$$

For example, suppose you want to use **Host Parameter 17 - [DL To Net 01]** to read Parameter 2 of an optional I/O module plugged into drive Port 6. Using the formula, the value for **Host Parameter 17 - [DL To Net 01]** would be  $(10000 * 6) + (2) = 60002$ .

Follow these steps to enable Datalinks to read data.

1. Set the values of only the required number of contiguous drive-to-controller Datalinks needed to read data from the drive and that are to be included in the network I/O connection.
2. Reset the option module; see [Resetting the Option Module on page 49](#).

The option module is configured to send output data to the master (controller). You must now configure the controller to recognize and transmit I/O to the option module. See [Chapter 4](#), Configuring the I/O.

## Setting the Option Module to Transmit Peer-to-Peer Data

Peer-to-peer communication can be set up as a simple peer I/O configuration or a custom peer I/O configuration.

### *Simple Peer I/O Configuration*

The most common use of peer I/O is to take the Logic Command and Reference from one drive and repeat it over Ethernet to one or more other drives. If scaling of the Reference is needed to enable drives to run at different but related speeds, use drive Parameter 609 - [TrmPct RefA Stpt]. The EtherNet/IP option module provides a simplified configuration method for simple peer I/O.

---

**IMPORTANT** Because of the 32-bit REAL (floating point) Reference, the following method works only if the drives transmitting and receiving are PowerFlex 750-Series drives. Peer-to-peer communication only works between drives with a 20-750-ENETR option module or PowerFlex 755 drives with the embedded EtherNet/IP adapter.

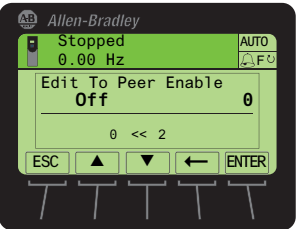
---

Follow these steps to set up the master (broadcast) side of simple peer I/O.

1. Set *Device Parameter 41* - [To Peer Period] and *42* - [To Peer Skip] as desired for your application.

Parameter 41 controls how frequently the option module will transmit data when it is changing. Parameter 42 controls how frequently the option module will transmit data when it is **not** changing.

2. Set *Host Parameter 31* - [DL To Net 15] to point to the drive parameter [Drive Logic Rslt], which is parameter 879 for PowerFlex 753 drives and PowerFlex 755 drives.
3. Set *Host Parameter 32* - [DL To Net 16] to point to the drive parameter [Drive Ref Rslt], which is parameter 883 for PowerFlex 753 drives and PowerFlex 755 drives.
4. Set *Device Parameter 39* - [DLs To Peer Cfg] to value of “2.”
5. Set *Device Parameter 43* - [To Peer Enable] to a value of “2” (Custom).



Value	Setting
0	Off (Default)
1	Reserved
2	Custom

Follow these steps to set up the slave (receiver) side of simple peer I/O.

1. Set *Device Parameter 32* - [Fr Peer Timeout] to a suitable timeout value for your application.

This value should be greater than the product of *Device Parameter 41* - [To Peer Period] and *Device Parameter 42* - [To Peer Skip] in the transmitting drive.

2. Set *Device Parameters 33* - [Fr Peer Addr 1] through *36* - [Fr Peer Addr 4] to the IP address of the drive transmitting peer I/O.
3. In each PowerFlex 750-Series slave drive, set drive parameter 308 - [Direction Mode] to “0” (Unipolar) to be sure that it properly follows the master drive’s speed reference and commanded direction.
4. Set *Device Parameter 37* - [Fr Peer Enable] to a value of “1” (Cmd/Ref).

*Custom Peer I/O Configuration*

Peer I/O also allows more flexibility in sending custom data over the network, but requires more configuration.

---

**IMPORTANT**    Because of the 32-bit REAL (floating point) Reference, the following method works only if the drives transmitting and receiving are PowerFlex 750-Series drives.

---

Follow these steps to set up the master (broadcast) side of custom peer I/O.

1. Decide how many Datalink parameters you want to transmit, and set **Device Parameter 39 - [DLs To Peer Cfg]** to that value.
2. Determine how the Datalinks are allocated.

The highest numbered of the 16 Datalinks are allocated to peer I/O. For example, if **Device Parameter 39 - [DLs To Peer Cfg]** is set to “3,” then Datalinks 14, 15, and 16 are allocated to peer I/O. To avoid an overlap between Master-Slave and peer I/O, make sure that **Device Parameter 04 - [DLs To Net Act]** plus **Device Parameter 39 - [DLs To Peer Cfg]** does not total more than 16.

3. Set **Host Parameters 17 through 32 - [DL To Net 01-16]** to the parameters you want to transmit, based on the allocation in step 2.
4. Reset the option module (see [Resetting the Option Module on page 49](#)) so that changes to **Device Parameter 39 - [DLs To Peer Cfg]** take effect.
5. Set **Device Parameters 41 - [To Peer Period]** and **42 - [To Peer Skip]** as required for your application.

Parameter 41 controls how frequently the option module will transmit data when it is changing. Parameter 42 controls how frequently the option module will transmit data when it is **not** changing.

6. Set **Device Parameter 43 - [To Peer Enable]** to a value of “2” (Custom).

Follow these steps to set up the slave (receiver) side of custom peer I/O.

1. Decide how many pieces of data (Logic Command, Reference, and Datalink parameters) you want to receive, and set **Device Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]** to that value.

This must match the number of parameters transmitted by the master.

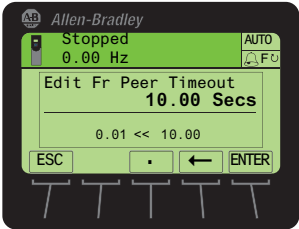
2. Determine how the Datalinks are allocated.

The highest numbered of the 16 Datalinks are allocated to peer I/O. For example, if **Device Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]** is set to “3,” Datalinks 14, 15, and 16 are allocated to peer I/O. To avoid an overlap between Master-Slave and peer I/O, make sure that **Device Parameter 03 - [DLs From Net Act]** plus **Device Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]** does not total more than 16.

3. Set **Host Parameters 1 through 16 - [DL From Net 01-16]** to the parameters you want to receive, based on the allocation in step 2.

4. Set **Device Parameter 32** - [Fr Peer Timeout] to a suitable timeout value for your application.

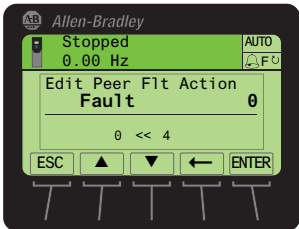
This value should be greater than the product of **Device Parameter 41** - [To Peer Period] and **Device Parameter 42** - [To Peer Skip] in the transmitting drive.



5. Set **Host Parameter 35** - [Peer Flt Action] to the desired action if peer I/O data is not received before the timeout is reached.



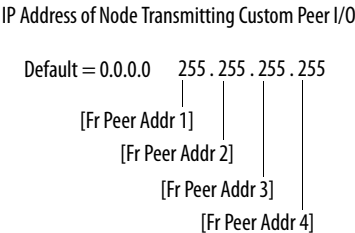
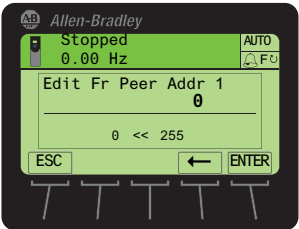
**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. **Host Parameter 35** - [Peer Flt Action] lets you determine the action of the option module and connected drive if the option module is unable to communicate with the designated peer. By default, this parameter faults the drive. You may configure this parameter so that the drive continues to run, however, precautions should be taken to verify that the setting of this parameter does not create a hazard of injury or equipment damage. When commissioning the drive, verify that your system responds correctly to various situations (for example, a disconnected cable).



Value	Description
0	Fault (Default)
1	Stop
2	Zero Data
3	Hold Last
4	Send Flt Cfg

For more details about fault action, see [Setting a Fault Action \(Adapter mode only\) on page 46](#).

6. Set **Device Parameters 33** - [Fr Peer Addr 1] through **36** - [Fr Peer Addr 4] to the IP address of the drive transmitting the custom peer I/O.



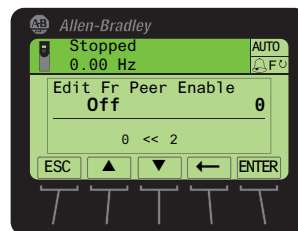
7. If a Logic Command is being sent, use *Device Parameter 30 - [Logic Src Cfg]* to set the number of the Datalink that contains the Logic Command within the range defined by *Device Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]*.

For example, if *Device Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]* is set to receive five Datalinks (Datalinks 12 through 16) and the first of those five Datalinks (Datalink 12) contains the Logic Command, set *Device Parameter 30 - [Logic Src Cfg]* to a value of “1.” Otherwise, set Parameter 30 to a value of “0.” For Logic Command bit definitions, see [Appendix D](#) or the drive documentation.

8. If a Reference is being sent, use *Device Parameter 31 - [Ref Src Cfg]* to set the number of the Datalink that contains the Reference within the range defined by *Device Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]*.

For example, if *Device Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]* is set to receive five Datalinks (Datalinks 12 through 16) and the second of those five Datalinks (Datalink 13) contains the Reference, set *Device Parameter 31 - [Ref Src Cfg]* to a value of “2.” Otherwise, set Parameter 31 to a value of “0.”

9. In each PowerFlex 750-Series slave drive, set drive parameter 308 - [Direction Mode] to “0” (Unipolar) to be sure that it properly follows the master drive’s speed reference and commanded direction.
10. Reset the option module (see [Resetting the Option Module on page 49](#)) so that changes to *Device Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]* take effect.
11. Set *Device Parameter 37 - [Fr Peer Enable]* to a value of “2” (Custom).



Value	Setting
0	Off (Default)
1	Cmd/Ref
2	Custom

## Setting a Fault Action (Adapter mode only)

By default, when communication is disrupted (for example, the network cable is disconnected), the controller is idle (in program mode or faulted), and/or peer I/O or explicit messaging for drive control is disrupted, the drive responds by faulting if it is using I/O from the network. You can configure a different response to these events:

- Disrupted I/O communication by using *Host Parameter 33 - [Comm Flt Action]*.
- An idle controller by using *Host Parameter 34 - [Idle Flt Action]*.
- Disrupted peer I/O by using *Host Parameter 35 - [Peer Flt Action]*.
- Disrupted explicit messaging for drive control via PCCC, the CIP Register Object or the CIP Assembly object by using *Host Parameter 36 - [Msg Flt Action]*.



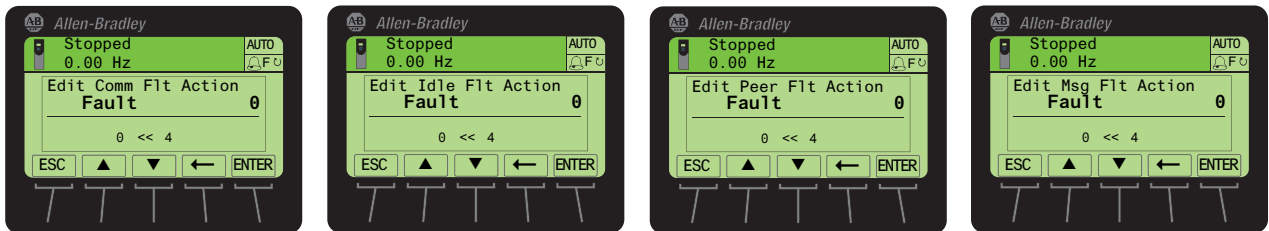
**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. *Host Parameters 33 - [Comm Flt Action], 34 - [Idle Flt Action], 35 - [Peer Flt Action], and 36 - [Msg Flt Action]* respectively let you determine the action of the option module and connected drive if communication is disrupted, the controller is idle, peer I/O is disrupted, or explicit messaging for drive control is disrupted. By default, these parameters fault the drive. You may configure these parameters so that the drive continues to run, however, precautions should be taken to verify that the settings of these parameters do not create a risk of injury or equipment damage. When commissioning the drive, verify that your system responds correctly to various situations (for example, a disconnected network cable, controller in idle state or explicit message control disruption).

## Changing the Fault Action

Set the values of *Host Parameters 33 - [Comm Flt Action], 34 - [Idle Flt Action], 35 - [Peer Flt Action], and 36 - [Msg Flt Action]* to any of these responses.

Value	Action	Description
0	Fault	The drive is faulted and stopped. (Default)
1	Stop	The drive is stopped, but not faulted.
2	Zero Data	The drive is sent 0 for output data. This does not command a stop.
3	Hold Last	The drive continues in its present state.
4	Send Flt Cfg	The drive is sent the data that you set in the fault configuration parameters ( <i>Host Parameters 37 - [Flt Cfg Logic], 38 - [Flt Cfg Ref], and 39 - [Flt Cfg DL 01]</i> through <i>54 - [Flt Cfg DL 16]</i> ).

Figure 9 - Edit Fault Action HIM Screens



Changes to these parameters take effect immediately. A reset is not required.

If communication is disrupted and then is re-established, the drive will automatically receive commands over the network again.

## Setting the Fault Configuration Parameters

When setting *Host Parameter 33* - [Comm Flt Action], *34* - [Idle Flt Action], *35* - [Peer Flt Action] or *36* - [Msg Flt Action] to “Send Flt Cfg,” the values in the following parameters are sent to the drive after a communication fault, idle fault, peer I/O fault, and/or explicit messaging for drive control fault occurs. You must set these parameters to values required by your application.

Option Module <i>Host Parameter</i>	Description
Parameter 37 - [Flt Cfg Logic]	A 32-bit value sent to the drive for Logic Command.
Parameter 38 - [Flt Cfg Ref]	A 32-bit REAL (floating point) value sent to the drive for Reference.
Parameter 39 - [Flt Cfg DL 01] through Parameter 54 - [Flt Cfg DL 16]	A 32-bit integer value sent to the drive for a Datalink. If the destination of the Datalink is a REAL (floating point) parameter, you must convert the desired value to the binary representation of the REAL value. (An internet search of “hex to float” provides a link to a tool to do this conversion.)

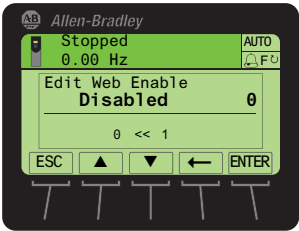
Changes to these parameters take effect immediately. A reset is not required.

## Setting Web Page Access

By using a web browser to access the IP address set for the option module, you can view the option module web pages for information about the module, the drive and other DPI devices connected to the drive, such as HIMs or converters.

**IMPORTANT** Depending on its selected operating mode (Adapter or Tap), the option module provides a unique set of web pages with different information.

By default, the option module web pages are disabled. To enable the option module web pages, set *Device Parameter 26* - [Web Enable] to “1” (Enabled).

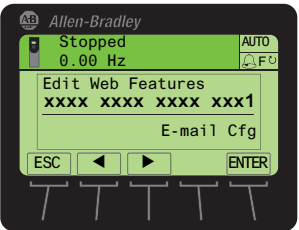


Value	Description
0	Disabled (Default)
1	Enabled

For more details on the option module web pages, see [Chapter 8, Viewing Option Module Web Pages](#).

In Adapter mode, the option module can be configured to automatically send e-mail messages to desired addresses when selected drive faults occur and/or are cleared, and/or when the option module takes a communication or idle fault action.

Bit 0 of *Device Parameter 27* - [Web Features] is used to protect the configured settings for e-mail messaging. By default, settings are not protected and the user can make changes. To protect the configured settings, set the value of E-mail Cfg Bit 0 to “0” (Disabled). You can unprotect the configuration by changing Bit 0 back to “1” (Enabled). E-mail messaging will always remain active regardless of whether or not its settings are protected—unless e-mail messaging was *never* configured. For more information about configuring option module e-mail messaging or to stop e-mail messages, see [Adapter Mode Configure E-mail Notification Web Page on page 130](#).



Bit	Description
0	E-mail Cfg (Default = 1 = Enabled)
1...15	Not Used

Bit 0 is the right-most bit. In the example above, it equals “1” (Enabled).

Changes to this parameter take effect immediately. A reset is not required.



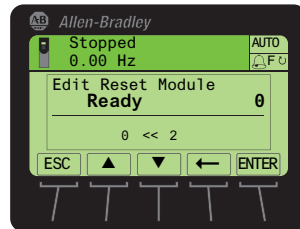
## Resetting the Option Module

Changes to switch and jumper settings and some option module parameters require you to reset the option module before the new settings take effect. You can reset the option module by power cycling the drive or by using *Device Parameter 25 - [Reset Module]*.



**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. If the option module is transmitting control I/O to the drive, the drive may fault when you reset the option module. Determine how your drive will respond before resetting the option module.

Set *Device Parameter 25 - [Reset Module]* to “1” (Reset Module).



Value	Description
0	Ready (Default)
1	Reset Module
2	Set Defaults

When you enter “1” (Reset Module), the option module will be immediately reset. An alternate method to reset the module is by power cycling the drive. When you enter “2” (Set Defaults), the option module will set ALL of its *Device* and *Host* parameters to their factory default values. (This is the same as pressing the ALL *soft key* when using the MEMORY folder method described in [Restoring Option Module Parameters to Factory Defaults on page 50.](#)) After performing a Set Defaults, you must enter “1” (Reset Module) or power cycle the drive so that the new values take effect. Thereafter, this parameter will be restored to a value of “0” (Ready).

**IMPORTANT** When operating the option module in Tap mode, *Host* parameters are NOT supported, so only *Device* parameters are reset to their factory default values.

**IMPORTANT** When performing a Set Defaults, the drive may detect a conflict and then not allow this function to occur. If this happens, first resolve the conflict and then repeat a Set Defaults action. Common reasons for a conflict include the drive running or a controller in Run mode.

**TIP** If your application allows, you can also reset the option module by cycling power to the drive (resetting the drive) or by using the HIM’s Reset Device function located in the drive’s DIAGNOSTIC folder.

## Restoring Option Module Parameters to Factory Defaults

As an alternate reset method, you can restore the option module parameters by using a MEMORY folder menu item instead of using *Device Parameter 25 - [Reset Module]* described in [Resetting the Option Module on page 49](#). The MEMORY folder method provides two ways to restore the option module *Device* and *Host* parameters:

- ALL—restores ALL option module *Device* and *Host* parameters to their factory default values.
- MOST—restores MOST option module *Device* and *Host* parameters—except the following which are used for network setup:
  - *Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]*
  - *Device Parameters 07 through 10 - [IP Addr Cfg 1-4]*
  - *Device Parameters 11 through 14 - [Subnet Cfg 1-4]*
  - *Device Parameters 15 through 18 - [Gateway Cfg 1-4]*
  - *Device Parameter 19 - [Net Rate Cfg 1]*
  - *Device Parameter 21 - [Net Rate Cfg 2]*
  - *Device Parameter 23 - [Net Rate Cfg 3]* (Tap mode only)

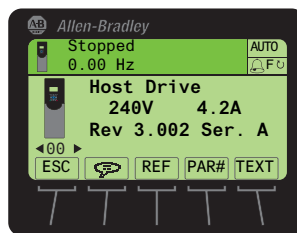
---

**IMPORTANT** When operating the option module in Tap mode, *Host* parameters are NOT supported, so only *Device* parameters are reset to their factory default values.

---

Follow these steps to restore option module *Device* and *Host* parameters to their factory default values.

1. Access the Status screen, which is displayed on HIM powerup.



2. Use the or key to scroll to the Port in which the option module is installed.
3. Press the key to display its last-viewed folder.
4. Use the or key to scroll to the MEMORY folder.
5. Use the or key to select **Set Defaults**.
6. Press the (Enter) key to display the Set Defaults pop-up box.
7. Press the (Enter) key again to display the warning pop-up box to reset *Device* and *Host* parameters to their factory default values.
8. Press the MOST *soft key* to restore MOST *Device* and *Host* parameters to factory defaults or press the ALL *soft key* to restore ALL parameters. Or

press the ESC *soft key* to cancel.

---

**IMPORTANT** When performing a Set Defaults, the drive may detect a conflict and then not allow this function to occur. If this happens, first resolve the conflict and then repeat this Set Defaults procedure. Common reasons for a conflict include the drive running or a controller in Run mode.

---

9. Reset the option module using *Device Parameter 25 - [Reset Module]* or by cycling power to the drive so that the restored parameters take effect.

## Viewing the Option Module Status Using Parameters

The following parameters provide information about the status of the option module. You can view these parameters at any time.

### When Operating in Adapter Mode

Option Module Device Parameter	Description
03 - [DLs From Net Act]	The number of controller-to-drive Datalinks that are included in the network I/O connection (controller outputs).
04 - [DLs To Net Act]	The number of drive-to-controller Datalinks that are included in the network I/O connection (controller inputs).
06 - [Net Addr Src]	Displays the source from which the option module IP address is taken. The source is determined by the option module Node Address switch settings shown in <a href="#">Figure 2</a> , and the value of <i>Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]</i> which can be any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “1” (Parameters)—uses address from <i>Device Parameters 07...10 - [IP Addr Cfg x]</i></li> <li>• “2” (BOOTP)</li> <li>• “3” (DHCP)—the default</li> </ul>
20 - [Net Rate Act 1]	The data rate used by the option module’s ENET1 network port.
22 - [Net Rate Act 2]	The data rate used by the option module’s ENET2 network port.
38 - [Fr Peer Status]	The status of the consumed peer I/O input connection. Values: 0 = Off; 1 = Waiting; 2 = Running; 3 = Faulted
29 - [DLs Fr Peer Act]	The number of peer-to-drive Datalinks that the drive is expecting.
40 - [DLs To Peer Act]	The number of drive-to-peer Datalinks that the drive is expecting.

### When Operating in Tap Mode

Option Module Device Parameter	Description
06 - [Net Addr Src]	Displays the source from which the option module IP address is taken. The source is determined by the option module Node Address switch settings shown in <a href="#">Figure 2</a> , and the value of <i>Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]</i> which can be any of the following: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• “1” (Parameters)—uses address from <i>Device Parameters 07...10 - [IP Addr Cfg x]</i></li> <li>• “2” (BOOTP)</li> <li>• “3” (DHCP)—the default</li> </ul>
20 - [Net Rate Act 1]	The data rate used by the option module’s ENET1 network port.
22 - [Net Rate Act 2]	The data rate used by the option module’s ENET2 network port.
24 - [Net Rate Act 3]	The data rate used by the option module’s ENET3 (DEVICE) port.

## Updating the Option Module Firmware

The option module firmware can be updated over the network or serially through a direct connection from a computer to the drive using a 1203-USB or 1203-SSS serial converter.

When updating firmware over the network, you can use the Allen-Bradley ControlFLASH software tool, the built-in update capability of DriveExplorer Lite or Full software, or the built-in update capability of DriveExecutive software.

When updating firmware through a direct serial connection from a computer to a drive, you can use the same Allen-Bradley software tools described above, or you can use HyperTerminal set to the X-modem protocol.

To obtain a firmware update for this option module, go to <http://www.ab.com/support/abdrives/webupdate>. This website contains all firmware update files and associated Release Notes that describe firmware update enhancements/anomalies, how to determine the existing firmware revision, and how to update the firmware using DriveExplorer software, DriveExecutive software, the ControlFLASH tool, or HyperTerminal.

## Configuring the I/O

This chapter provides instructions on how to configure a Rockwell Automation ControlLogix controller to communicate with the option module and connected PowerFlex drive.

For information on using a PLC-5, SLC 500, or MicroLogix 1100/1400 controller, see Controller Examples for EtherNet/IP Network Communications with PowerFlex 750-Series Drives, publication 750COM-AT001.

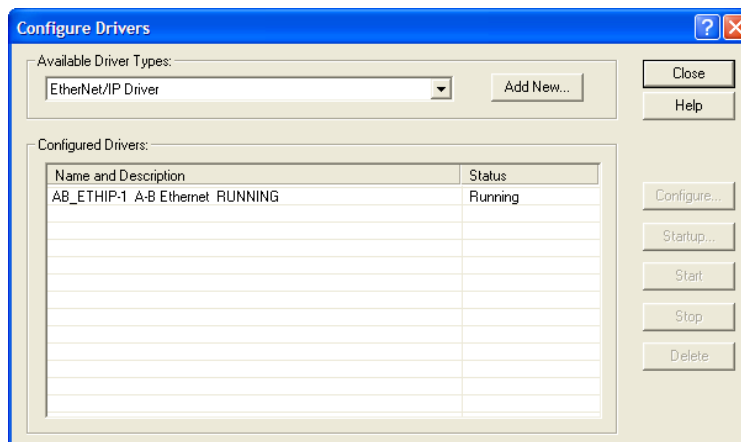
Topic	Page
<a href="#">Using RSLinx Classic Software</a>	53
<a href="#">Uploading the Electronic Data Sheet (EDS) File</a>	54
<a href="#">ControlLogix Controller Example (Adapter mode only)</a>	54

### Using RSLinx Classic Software

RSLinx Classic software, in all its variations (Lite, Gateway, OEM, and so forth), is used to provide a communication link between the computer, network, and controller. RSLinx Classic software requires its network-specific driver to be configured before communication is established with network devices. To configure the RSLinx driver, follow this procedure.

1. Start RSLinx Classic software.
2. From the Communications menu, choose Configure Drivers to display the Configure Drivers dialog box.
3. From the Available Driver Types pull-down menu, choose EtherNet/IP Driver.
4. Click Add New to display the Add New RSLinx Driver dialog box.
5. Use the default name or type a name.
6. Click OK.  
The “Configure driver:” dialog box appears.
7. Depending on your application, select either the browse local or remote subnet option.
8. Click OK.

The Configure Drivers dialog box reappears with the new driver in the Configured Drivers list.

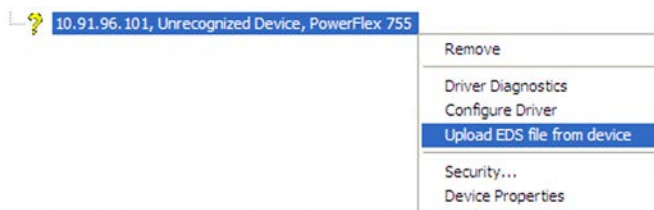


9. Click Close to close the Configure Drivers dialog box.
10. Keep RSLinx software running and verify that your computer recognizes the drive.
  - a. From the Communications menu, choose RSWho.
  - b. In the menu tree, click “+” next to the Ethernet driver.

Note that two other RSLinx drivers (Ethernet devices or Remote Devices via Linx Gateway) may be used. Use one of these drivers if the “EtherNet/IP Driver” cannot see your drive.

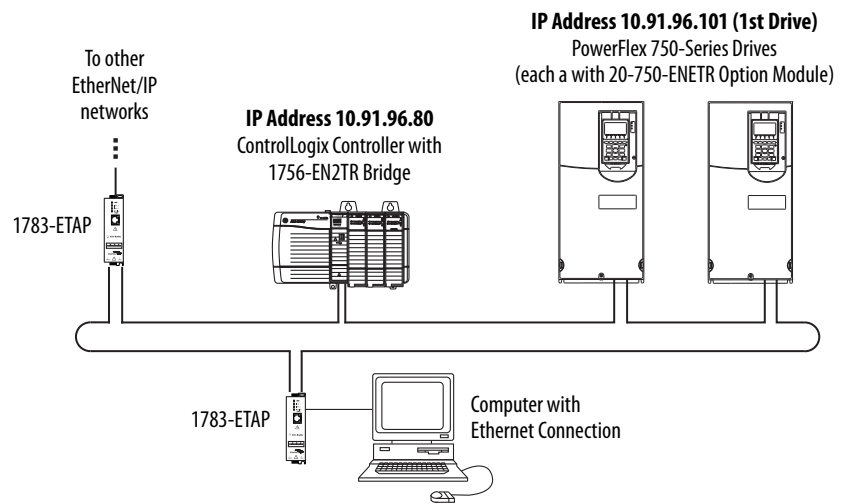
## Uploading the Electronic Data Sheet (EDS) File

The option module has embedded EDS files for PowerFlex 750-Series drives. This eliminates the need to download an EDS file from the Rockwell Automation website. Instead, RSLinx software is used to upload the EDS file from the option module. To do this, right-click the EtherNet/IP drive that is shown as a yellow question mark or “Unrecognized Device” in the RSWho dialog box and choose “Upload EDS file from device” as shown below. Uploading the EDS file also uploads the icon files for the device. The question mark will change to a drive (in Adapter mode) or an eTap (in Tap mode).



## ControlLogix Controller Example (Adapter mode only)

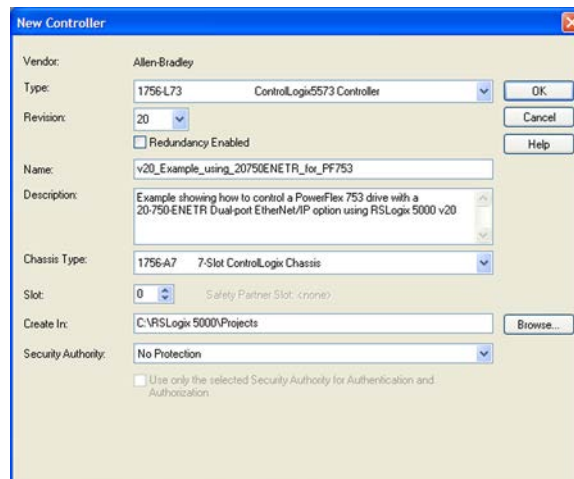
After the option module is configured, the drive and option module will be a single node on the network. This section provides the steps needed to configure a simple device-level ring (DLR) topology EtherNet/IP network (see [Figure 10](#)). In our example, we will configure a 1756-EN2TR (Series A) bridge to communicate with the first drive in the network ring using Logic Command/Status, Reference/Feedback, and 32 Datalinks (16 to read/16 to write) over the network.

**Figure 10 - Example ControlLogix Controller EtherNet/IP Device-level Ring Network**

## Adding the Bridge to the I/O Configuration

To establish communication between the controller and option module over the network, you must first add the ControlLogix controller and its bridge to the I/O configuration.

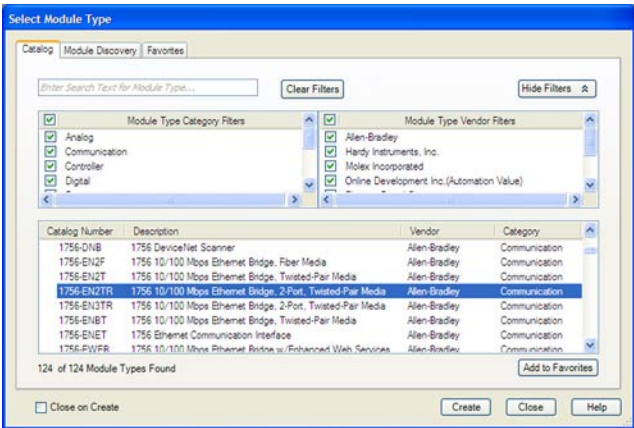
1. Start RSLogix 5000 software.
2. From the File menu, choose New to display the New Controller dialog box.



- a. Choose the appropriate choices for the fields in the dialog box to match your application.
- b. Click OK.  
The RSLogix 5000 dialog box reappears with the treeview in the left pane.
3. In the treeview, right-click the I/O Configuration folder and choose New Module.

The Select Module dialog box appears.

- 4. Expand the Communications group to display all of the available communication modules.

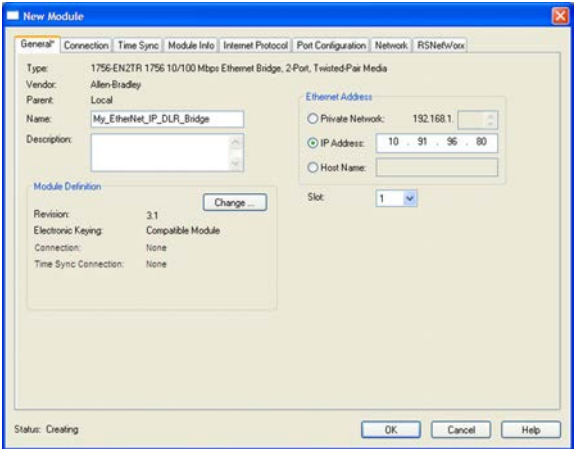


- 5. In the list, select the EtherNet/IP bridge used by your controller.

In this example, we use a 1756-EN2TR EtherNet/IP Bridge (Series A), so the 1756-EN2TR/A option is selected.

- 6. Click OK.
- 7. In the Select Major Revision pop-up dialog box, select the major revision of its firmware.
- 8. Click OK.

The bridge's New Module dialog box appears.



- 9. Edit the following:

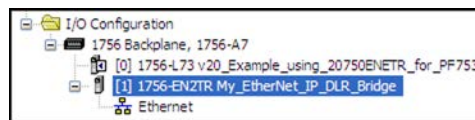
Box	Setting
Name	A name to identify the bridge.
Description	Optional – description of the bridge.



Box	Setting
Revision	Click Change to change Revision or Electronic Keying. The minor revision of the firmware in the bridge. (You already set the major revision by selecting the bridge series in step 5.)
Electronic Keying	<b>Compatible Module.</b> The “Compatible Module” setting for Electronic Keying verifies that the physical module is consistent with the software configuration before the controller and bridge make a connection. Therefore, be sure that you have set the correct revision in this dialog box. See the online Help for additional information on this and other Electronic Keying settings. If keying is not required, select “Disable Keying.” Disable keying is recommended.
IP Address	The IP address of the EtherNet/IP bridge.
Host Name	Not used.
Slot	The slot of the EtherNet/IP bridge in the rack.

**10. Click OK.**

The bridge is now configured for the EtherNet/IP network, added to the RSLogix 5000 project, and appears in the I/O Configuration folder. In our example, a 1756-EN2TR bridge appears under the I/O Configuration folder with its assigned name.



There are two ways to add the option module into the I/O configuration:

- Drive Add-on Profiles (RSLogix 5000 software, version 16.00 or later)
- Generic Profile (RSLogix 5000 software, all versions)

These are described in the following separate sections. If your version of RSLogix 5000 software supports drive Add-on Profiles, we recommend that you use this method.

## Using RSLogix 5000 Drive Add-on Profiles, Version 16.00 or Later

When compared to using the Generic Profile (all versions), the RSLogix 5000 drive Add-on Profiles provide the following advantages:

- Profiles for specific drives that provide descriptive controller tags for basic control I/O words (Logic Command/Status and Reference/Feedback) and Datalinks. Additionally, Datalinks automatically take the name of the drive parameter to which they are assigned. These profiles virtually eliminate I/O mismatch errors and substantially reduce drive configuration time.
- New Drive tab eliminates the need for a separate drive software configuration tool.
- Drive configuration settings are saved as part of the RSLogix 5000 software, version 16.00 or later, project file (.ACD) and also downloaded to the controller.

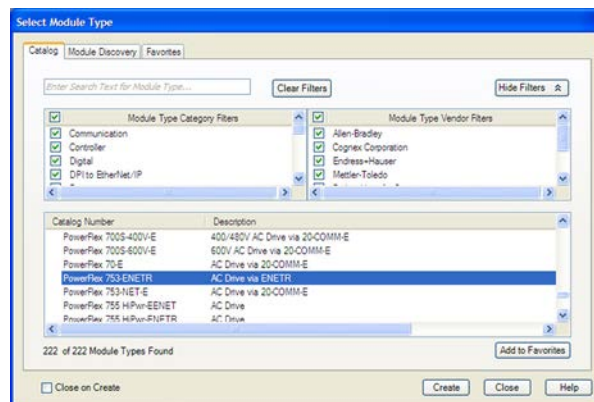
- Unicast connection (RSLogix 5000 software, version 18.00 or later)
- Drive Add-on Profiles, version 2.01 or later, enable I/O to be added online while the controller is in Run mode.
- Drive Add-on Profiles can be updated anytime. When a new drive is used or to benefit from new updates for Add-on Profiles, you will need the newest Add-on Profile update. Go to [www.ab.com/support/abdrives/webupdate](http://www.ab.com/support/abdrives/webupdate) to download the latest RSLogix 5000 drive Add-on Profile.

### *Adding the Drive/Option Module to the I/O Configuration*

To transmit data between the bridge and the drive, you must add the drive as a child device to the parent bridge. In this example, RSLogix 5000 software version 20.00 is used with drive Add-on Profile version 4.03. To determine your drive Add-on Profile version, see Allen-Bradley Knowledgebase document #65882.

1. In the treeview, right-click the bridge and choose New Module to display the Select Module dialog box.

In our example, we right-click the 1756-EN2TR/A bridge. Expand the Drives group to display all of the available drives with their communication Option Modules.

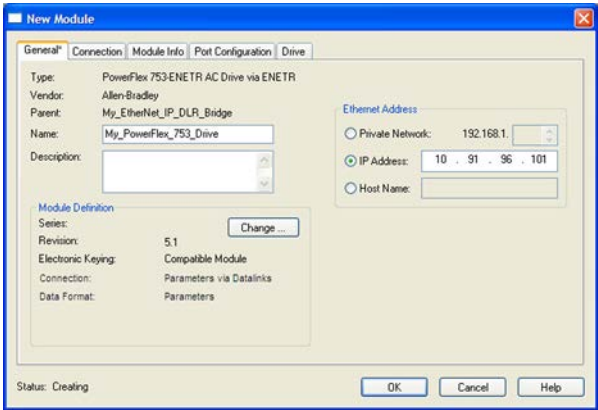


#### **TIP**

If the PowerFlex drive is not shown, go to [www.ab.com/support/abdrives/webupdate](http://www.ab.com/support/abdrives/webupdate) and download the latest RSLogix 5000 drive Add-on Profile. Add-on Profile version 4.03 (or later) includes profiles for PowerFlex 750-Series drives with the 20-750-ENETR option module.

2. From the list, select the drive and its connected option module.  
For this example, we selected “PowerFlex 753-ENETR.”
3. Click OK.

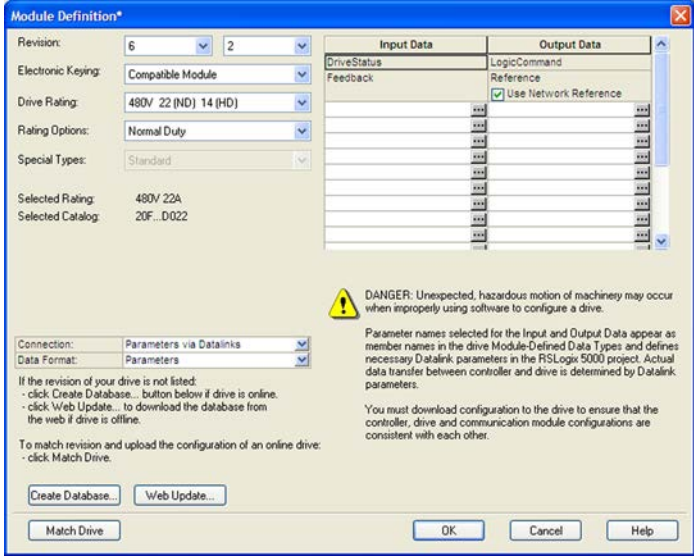
The drive's New Module dialog box appears.



4. On the General tab, edit the following data about the drive/option module.

Box	Setting
Name	A name to identify the drive.
Description	Optional – description of the drive/option module.
IP Address	The IP address of the option module.

5. On the New Module dialog box in the Module Definition section, click Change to launch the Module Definition dialog box and begin the drive/option module configuration process.



**TIP** To get the latest RSLogix 5000 drive Add-on Profile, go to [www.ab.com/support/abdrives/webupdate](http://www.ab.com/support/abdrives/webupdate).


## 6. In the Module Definition dialog box, edit the following information.

Box	Setting
Revision	<p>The major and minor revision of the firmware (database) in the drive. If the drive's major and minor revision is not available, the drive database is not installed on your computer. To get the correct database revision, use one of the following buttons at the bottom left of the Module Definition dialog box:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Create Database:</b> Creates a database from an online network drive. Clicking this button displays an RSLogix software RSWHo dialog box. Browse to the online drive (for this example, PowerFlex 753), select it, and click OK. The database will be uploaded and stored on the computer. Thereafter, close the Module Definition dialog box and then re-open it to display the new revision.</li> <li>• <b>Web Update:</b> When a drive is not available online, opens the Allen-Bradley Drives Web Updates website to download a specific database file. After downloading the file, close the Module Definition dialog box and then re-open it to display the new revision.</li> <li>• <b>Match Drive:</b> Use this button when the drive being added to the network matches the drive profile (revision, rating, Datalinks, configuration settings, and so forth) of an existing online network drive. Click this button to conveniently create a duplicate drive profile from the online drive, and automatically load this identical information into the Module Definition dialog box. This eliminates the need to manually enter the information each time a new drive with a matching profile is added to the network.</li> </ul>
Electronic Keying	<p><b>Compatible Module.</b> The "Compatible Module" setting for Electronic Keying verifies that the physical module is consistent with the software configuration before the controller and bridge make a connection. Therefore, be sure that you have set the correct revision in this dialog box. See the online Help for additional information on this and other Electronic Keying settings. If keying is not required, select "Disable Keying." Drives do not require keying, and so "Disable Keying" is recommended.</p> <p>When using RSLogix 5000 software, version 20 or later, and Automatic Device Configuration (ADC) with Firmware Supervisor upgrade support to store firmware for the drive, always choose "Exact Match." When using ADC, see the table on <a href="#">page 70</a> for more details.</p>
Drive Rating	The voltage and current rating of the drive. If the drive rating is not listed, the drive database is not installed on your computer. To get the drive rating, use the <b>Create Database</b> , <b>Web Update</b> , or <b>Match Drive</b> button described above.
Rating Options	Selects the drive power output required for the application. This must match the drive's actual rating.
Special Types	Reserved for future use.
Connection	<b>Parameters via Datalinks.</b> When selecting "Parameters via Datalinks" (default), the controller tags for the Datalinks use the drive parameter names to which they are assigned. When selecting "Datalinks," the controller tags for the Datalinks have non-descriptive UserDefinedData[n] names like those used in RSLogix 5000 software, version 15.00.
Data Format	<b>Parameters.</b> When the Connection field is set to "Parameters via Datalinks," "Parameters" is automatically selected. When the Connection field is set to "Datalinks," you must select the number of Datalinks required for your application in the "Data Format" field.
Input Data	Assigns selected drive or connected peripheral parameters to be READ by the controller using DL To Net Datalinks. See steps 6a through 6e below for details.
Output Data	Assigns selected drive or connected peripheral parameters to be WRITTEN by the controller using DL From Net Datalinks. See steps 6a through 6e below for details.
Use Network Reference	Conveniently selects the speed reference for the drive to come from the network. This box is checked by default.

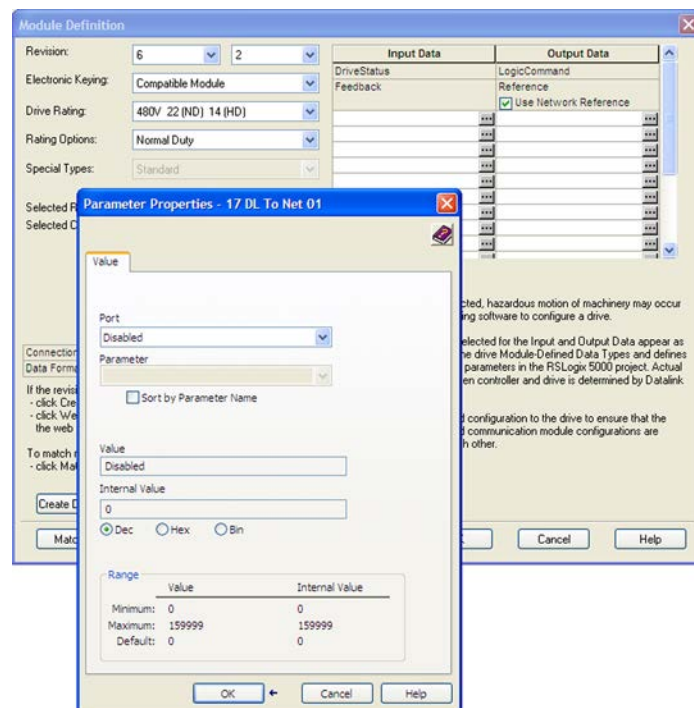
On the Module Definition dialog box, notice that the automatically-assigned controller tags DriveStatus, Feedback, LogicCommand, and Reference are always used.

However, when using Datalinks you must still assign **Host Parameters 01...16 - [DL From Net 01-16]** and **Host Parameters 17...32 - [DL To Net 01-16]** to point to the appropriate drive or connected peripheral

parameters. The procedure to configure the Datalinks on the Module Definition dialog box for the Input Data and Output Data is the same.

- a. Click the  button in the topmost blank row to display the Parameter Properties dialog box for the corresponding Datalink.

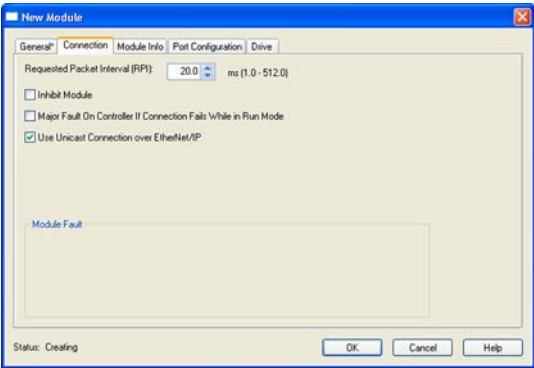
**IMPORTANT** Always use the Datalink parameters in consecutive numerical order, starting with the first parameter. (For example, use Parameters 01, 02, and 03 to configure three Datalinks to write data and/or Parameters 17, 18, 19, 20, and 21 to configure five Datalinks to read data.) Otherwise, the network I/O connection will be larger than necessary, which needlessly increases controller response time and memory usage.



- b. From the Port field pull-down menu, choose the port of the device to which this Datalink will be assigned (for this example, Port 0, the PowerFlex 753 drive).
  - c. From the Parameter field pull-down menu for the selected device, choose the parameter to which this Datalink will point (for this example, drive parameter 370 - [Stop Mode A]).
  - d. Click OK to complete configuration of the Datalink.  
The name of the parameter that this Datalink points to is now shown in the row on the Module Definition dialog box.
  - e. Repeat steps 6a through 6d for each Datalink being configured.
7. Click OK on the Module Definition dialog box to save the drive and option module configuration, and close the dialog box.

The drive's New Module dialog box reappears.

8. Click the Connection tab.



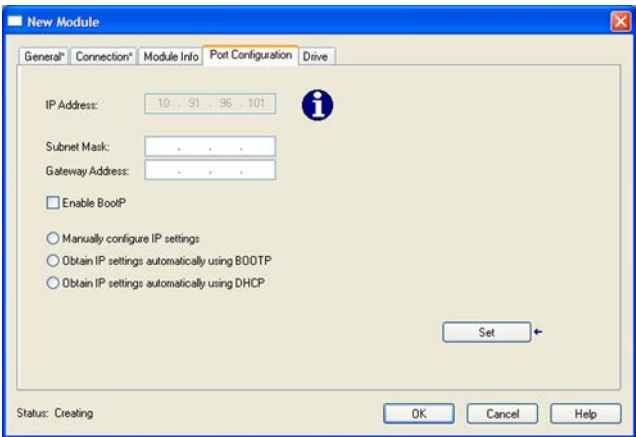
9. In the “Requested Packet Interval (RPI)” box, set the value to 2.0 milliseconds or greater (default is 20.0 milliseconds).

This value determines the maximum interval that a controller should use to move data to and from the option module. To conserve bandwidth, use higher values for communicating with low priority devices.

The “Inhibit Module” box, when checked, inhibits the module from communicating with the RSLogix 5000 project. When the “Major Fault On” box is checked, a major controller fault will occur when the module’s connection fails while the controller is in the Run Mode. For this example, leave the “Inhibit Module” and “Major Fault On” boxes unchecked.

Unicast support has been added to RSLogix 5000 software, version 18.00 or later. Unicast is recommended whenever possible. For the benefits of unicast operation, see [Preparing for an Installation on page 17](#).

10. Click the Port Configuration tab.



11. In the Port Configuration tab dialog box, edit the following information.

Box	Setting
IP Address	The IP address of the option module that was already set in the General tab. This field is not configurable (grayed out).
Subnet Mask	The Subnet Mask configuration setting of the network. This setting must match the setting of other devices on the network (for example, 255.255.255.0).
Gateway Address	The Gateway Address configuration setting of the network. This setting must match the setting of other devices on the network (for example, 10.91.100.1).



Box	Setting
Enable BootP	When this box is checked, BOOTP is enabled in the option module and will ignore the IP address set in the General tab. When unchecked, the controller uses the set IP address. This is another method to enable/disable BOOTP in the option module. For this example, leave this box unchecked.

12. Click Set to save the Port Configuration information which sets the corresponding offline Subnet Cfg x and Gateway Cfg x parameters in the option module.
13. Click OK on the New Module dialog box.

The new node (“My\_PowerFlex\_753\_Drive” in this example) now appears under the bridge (“My\_EtherNet\_IP\_Bridge” in this example) in the I/O Configuration folder. If you double-click the Controller Tags, you will see that module-defined data types and tags have been automatically created ([Figure 11](#) and [Figure 12](#)). Note that all tag names are defined and Datalinks include the assigned drive parameter name. After you save and download the configuration, these tags allow you to access the Input and Output data of the drive via the controller’s ladder logic.

**Figure 11 - Controller Input Tags**

Name	Value	Data Type
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive		AB:PowerFlex753...
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus	2#0000_0000_000...	DINT
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Ready		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Active		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_CommandDir		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_ActualDir		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Accelerating		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Decelerating		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Alarm		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Faulted		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_AtSpeed		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Manual		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_SpdRefBt0		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_SpdRefBt1		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_SpdRefBt2		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_SpdRefBt3		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_SpdRefBt4		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Running		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Jogging		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Stopping		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_DCBraking		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_DBActive		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_SpeedMode		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_PositionMode		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_TorqueMode		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_AtZeroSpeed		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_AtHome		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_AtLimit		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_CurLimit		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_BusFrgReg		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_EnableOn		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_MotorOL		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DriveStatus_Regen		BOOL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.Feedback	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.StopModeA		DINT
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.StopModeB		DINT
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.AccelTime1	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.AccelTime2	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DecelTime1	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.DecelTime2	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.JogAccDecTime	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.JogSpeed1	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.JogSpeed2	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.PresetSpeed1	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.PresetSpeed2	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.PresetSpeed3	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.PresetSpeed4	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.PresetSpeed5	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.PresetSpeed6	0.0	REAL
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive.PresetSpeed7	0.0	REAL

Figure 12 - Controller Output Tags

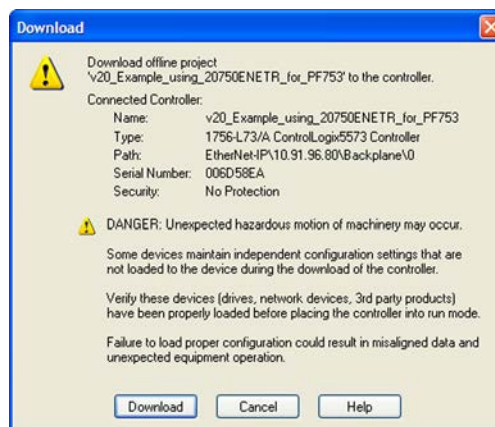
Name	Value	Data Type
+ My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:1	{...}	AB:PowerFlex753...
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0	{...}	AB:PowerFlex753...
+ My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand	2#0000_0000_000...	DINT
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_Stop	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_Start	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_Jog1	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_ClearFaults	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_Forward	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_Reverse	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_Manual	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_AccelTime1	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_AccelTime2	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_DecelTime1	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_DecelTime2	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_SpdRefSel0	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_SpdRefSel1	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_SpdRefSel2	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_CoastStop	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_CLimitStop	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_Run	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.LogicCommand_Jog2	0	BOOL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.Reference	0.0	REAL
+ My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.StopModeA	0	DINT
+ My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.StopModeB	0	DINT
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.AccelTime1	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.AccelTime2	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.DecelTime1	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.DecelTime2	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.JogAccDecTime	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.JogSpeed1	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.JogSpeed2	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.PresetSpeed1	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.PresetSpeed2	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.PresetSpeed3	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.PresetSpeed4	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.PresetSpeed5	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.PresetSpeed6	0.0	REAL
- My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:0.PresetSpeed7	0.0	REAL

### *Saving the I/O Configuration to the Controller*

After adding the bridge and drive/option module to the I/O configuration, you must download the configuration to the controller. You should also save the configuration to a file on your computer.

1. From the Communications menu in the RSLogix 5000 dialog box, choose Download.

The Download dialog box appears.






**TIP**

If a message box reports that RSLogix 5000 software is unable to go online, find your controller in the Who Active dialog box. From the Communications menu, choose Who Active. After finding and selecting the controller, click Set Project Path to establish the path. If your controller does not appear, you need to add or configure the EtherNet/IP driver with RSLinx software. See [Using RSLinx Classic Software on page 53](#) and RSLinx online help for details.

2. Click Download to download the configuration to the controller.

When the download is successfully completed, RSLogix 5000 software goes into the Online mode and the I/O Not Responding box in the upper-left of the dialog box should be flashing green. Also, a yellow warning symbol  should be displayed on the I/O Configuration folder in the treeview and on the drive profile.

If the controller was in Run Mode before clicking Download, RSLogix 5000 software prompts you to change the controller mode back to Remote Run. In this case, choose the appropriate mode for your application. If the controller was in Program Mode before clicking Download, this prompt will not appear.

3. From the File menu, choose Save.

If this is the first time you saved the project, the Save As dialog box appears.

- a. Navigate to a folder.
- b. Type a file name.
- c. Click Save to save the configuration as a file on your computer.

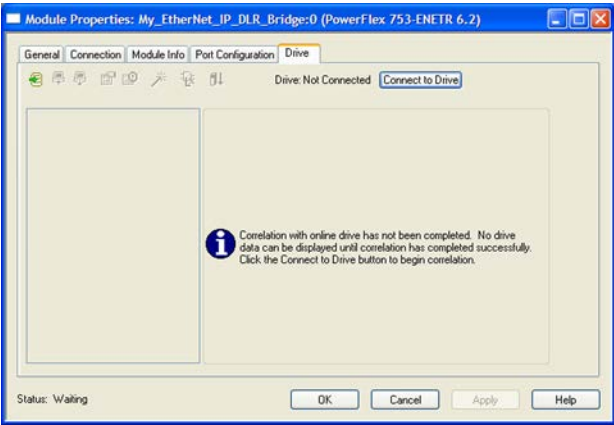
To be sure that present project configuration values are saved, RSLogix 5000 software prompts you to upload them. Click Yes to upload and save the values.

### *Correlating the Drive with the Controller*

You must now correlate the drive settings to the RSLogix 5000 project I/O settings so that they match. This requires loading the project I/O settings into the drive.

1. In the treeview under I/O Configuration, right-click the drive profile (for this example My\_PowerFlex\_753\_Drive) and choose Properties.

2. Click the Drive tab.

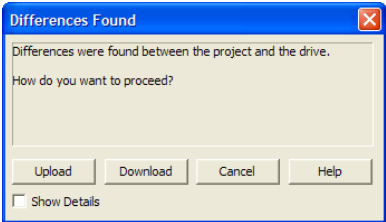


3. Click Connect to Drive to begin the correlation process.

After the drive configuration data has been verified, a pop-up dialog box appears, which synchronizes ports from the online drive to the project to be sure that the correct Datalinks are assigned.

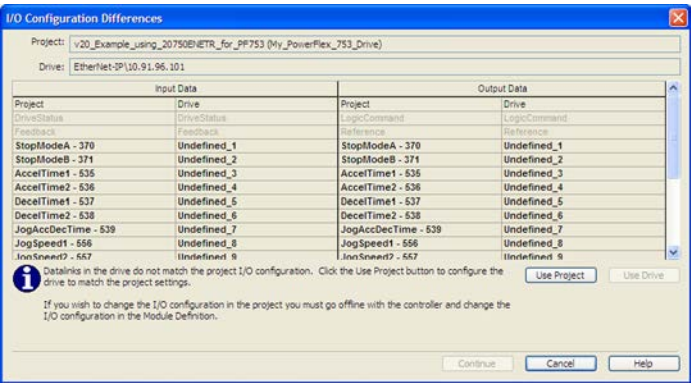
4. Click OK.

If the Differences Found dialog box appears—which is typical, click Download. This will download the project settings from the controller to the drive and its connected option module. If Upload is clicked, the drive and option module settings are uploaded to the controller.



**TIP**      On subsequent connections to the drive (after the initial download), click Upload.

5. The I/O Configuration Differences dialog box appears.



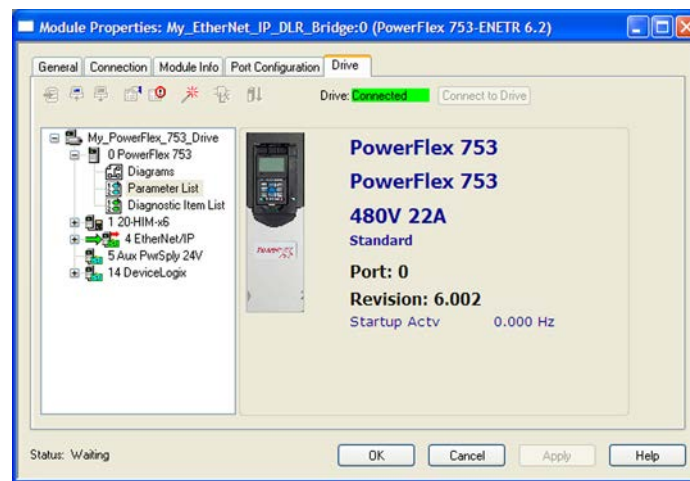
6. To match the Datalinks in the drive to the project I/O configuration, click Use Project.

After the Datalinks have been matched, the Input Data and Output Data columns are grayed out.

7. Click Continue.

A series of download dialog boxes appear, which may take a minute to complete. Thereafter, the I/O OK box in the upper-left of the RSLogix 5000 dialog box should now be steady green and the yellow warning symbols ⚠ in the treeview under the I/O Configuration folder and drive profile should be gone.

After a few moments, the Module Properties dialog box should indicate that it is connected to the online drive.



8. Click OK to close the Module Properties dialog box for the drive.

## Using Automatic Device Configuration (ADC) with RSLogix 5000 Software, Version 20.00 or Later

Automatic Device Configuration (ADC) is an 'RSLogix 5000 software, version 20.00 or later, feature' that supports the automatic download of configuration data. This occurs after the Logix controller establishes an EtherNet/IP network connection to a PowerFlex 750-Series drive, firmware revision 4.001 or later, and its associated peripherals.

An RSLogix 5000 software, version 16.00 or later, project (.ACD file) contains the configuration settings for any PowerFlex drives in the project. When the project is downloaded to the Logix controller, these settings are also transferred and reside in the controller's memory. Prior to ADC in RSLogix 5000 software version 20.00, downloading PowerFlex 750-Series drive configuration data was a manual process where the user would open the Drive tab in the respective Drive Add-on Profile (AOP) in RSLogix 5000 software and click the Download icon. ADC in RSLogix 5000 software, version 20.00 or later, now automates the

process and saves the user time. It is particularly beneficial in a drive replacement situation when a production line is down.

**TIP** Use with Stratix 6000 and 8000 switches to provide dynamic IP address assignment by port. This eliminates the need for the user to manually enter the IP address, Subnet mask, and Gateway address prior to connecting a replacement drive to the Ethernet network.

ADC can also work in tandem with Firmware Supervisor. If Firmware Supervisor is set up and enabled for a drive (“Exact Match” keying must be used), the drive/peripheral will be automatically upgraded (if necessary) prior to any ADC operation for that port.

---

**IMPORTANT** **Logix ‘owns’ the configuration of the drive. ADC will be triggered any time the Logix controller detects a configuration signature mismatch when establishing an EtherNet/IP network I/O connection.** The use of other configuration tools, such as a HIM, DriveExplorer software, or DriveTools SP software, should be minimized and restricted to monitor-only operation. Any configuration changes made by these tools will cause a configuration signature mismatch the next time the Logix controller connects to the device and ADC will write over any changes made by the other tools. Consider using the Write Mask function (drive Parameter 888 - [Write Mask Cfg]) to prevent tools connected to ports other than the Embedded EtherNet/IP port in a PowerFlex 755 drive from writing to the drive. Any drive configuration changes should be made with the RSLogix 5000 Add-on Profile (AOP).

---

#### *Version 4.01 Drive Add-on Profiles (AOPs)*

RSLogix 5000 software, version 20.00 ships with **version 4.01** Drive Add-on Profiles (AOPs). Note the following ADC operating status when using version 4.01 Drive AOPs:

- When adding a new drive, ADC is **enabled** by default for any drive that supports ADC, such as PowerFlex 753 drives with firmware 7.001 or later, or PowerFlex 755 drives with firmware 4.001 or later.
- When converting RSLogix 5000 projects, version 16.00...19.00, to version 20.00 projects (with version 4.01 Drive AOPs), ADC will be **enabled** by default for any drive that supports ADC, such as PowerFlex 753 drives with firmware 7.001 or later, or PowerFlex 755 drives with firmware 4.001 or later.

RSLogix 5000 software, version 20.00 can be updated with version 4.02 (or later) Drive AOPs, which are available via free download at:

<http://www.ab.com/support/abdrives/webupdate/software.html>




**TIP** To identify the Drive AOP version, click the icon in the upper-left corner of the Module Properties dialog box and select “About Module Profile.”

*Version 4.02 (or later) Drive Add-on Profiles (AOPs)*

**Version 4.02** Drive AOPs require user action to enable ADC. This helps verify that the user understands ADC operation prior to turning it on. Note the following ADC operating status when using version 4.02 (or later) Drive AOPs:

- When adding a new drive, ADC is **disabled** by default for any drive that supports ADC, such as PowerFlex 753 drives with firmware 7.001 or later, or PowerFlex 755 drives with firmware 4.001 or later.
- When converting an earlier RSLogix 5000 project to a version 20.00 project that has been updated with version 4.02 (or later) Drive AOPs or when updating a project created with version 4.01 Drive AOPs, any ADC settings will be **passed through as-is** for drives that support ADC. For example:
  - If ADC was disabled for a drive in a previous project, it will remain disabled.
  - If ADC was enabled for a drive using version 4.01 Drive AOPs and that project was later updated to version 4.02 (or later) Drive AOPs, it will remain enabled.

Version 4.02 (or later) Drive AOPs also have an ADC icon on the Drive tab to show general ADC enable/disable status for the drive:

Icon	Meaning
	No ports on the drive have ADC enabled.
	At least one port on the drive has ADC enabled.
	ADC is not supported.

Clicking the ADC icon will launch the ADC configuration dialog box. This provides a single, convenient location to enable/disable ADC for any of the ports on the drive.

*Configuring a PowerFlex 750-Series Drive for ADC*

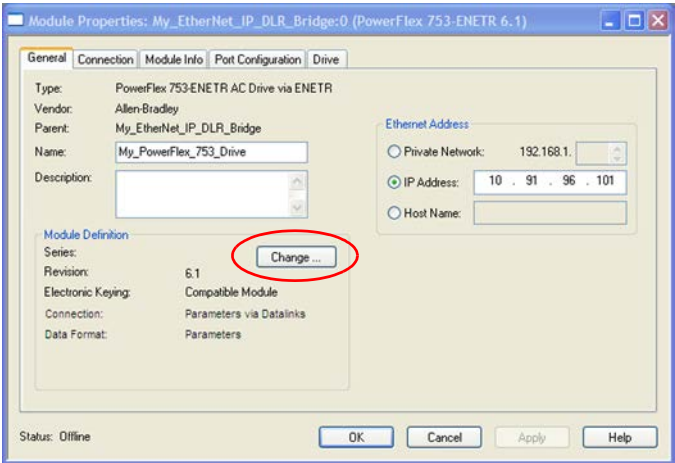

---

**IMPORTANT** ADC is supported by only PowerFlex 753 drives with firmware 7.001 or later, and PowerFlex 755 drives with firmware 4.001 or later.

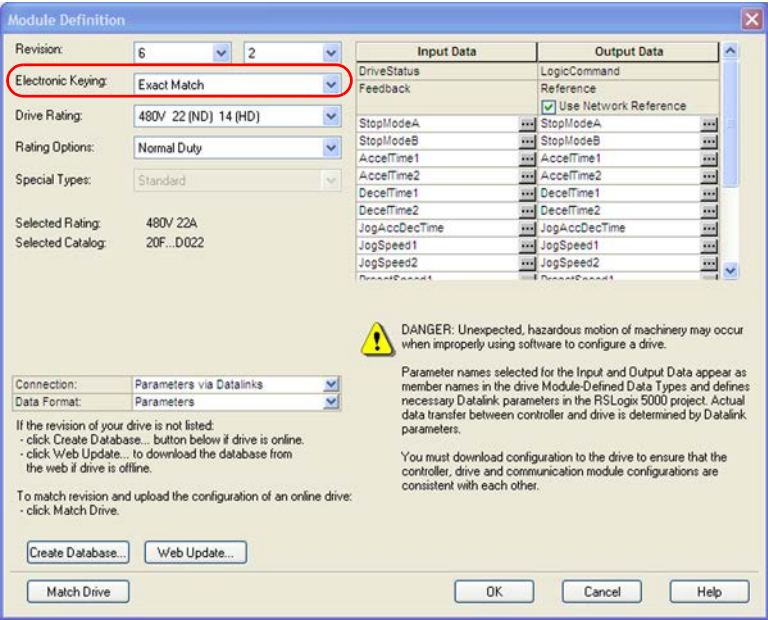
---

ADC is configured within the AOP of the PowerFlex 750-Series drive. Start by creating or opening a PowerFlex 750-Series drive in the RSLogix 5000 I/O Configuration folder.

1. Open the drive General tab dialog box.



2. Click Change to open the Module Definition dialog box.
3. Select the appropriate Electronic Keying for your application.



There are three Electronic Keying choices available in the Module Definition dialog box in the Drive AOP, but only two are recommended with ADC.

Electronic Keying Selection	Recommendation
Exact Match	<p>This selection should only be used if:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"><li>Your system design specification requires that a replacement drive/peripheral be identical—down to the Minor revision of firmware (x.xxx).</li><li>You will be implementing Firmware Supervisor upgrade support in addition to ADC. ControlFLASH firmware kits for the revision of firmware used for each drive/peripheral must be installed on the computer running RSLogix 5000 software. Upgrade files can be downloaded from: <a href="http://www.ab.com/support/abdrives/webupdate">http://www.ab.com/support/abdrives/webupdate</a></li></ul>

Electronic Keying Selection	Recommendation
Compatible Module	This selection is the typical ADC selection when Firmware Supervisor is not used. A replacement drive (including peripherals) will need to have the same or higher firmware revision as the original. Since drives with newer firmware are required to be compatible with older firmware, this allows ADC to work without compatibility concerns. Note that if a Series change accompanies a Major firmware change, the replacement drive may or may not be “compatible” with respect to keying.
Disabled	When using ADC, this selection should generally not be used. This selection allows a replacement drive to have any different Major (X.xxx) and/or Minor (X.xxx) firmware revision. It is up to the user to provide a replacement that has a firmware revision later than or equal to the original drive. If a replacement drive with older firmware is used, the ADC download may fail.

Keying for peripherals is managed via the respective Port Properties dialog box for each peripheral.

Electronic Keying for the embedded EtherNet/IP adapter (only Port 13 on PowerFlex 755 drives) and DeviceLogix (Port 14) ports are “Disabled” by default. Both ports do not have individual firmware and are currently managed by the drive’s firmware (Port 0). If you set either of these to “Exact Match,” Firmware Supervisor will be unable to locate the upgrade files during setup. If the “Fault Drive Connection on Peripheral Error” checkbox is selected and there is a mismatch or failure while connecting to or configuring these two ports, the overall ADC process will fail and no I/O connection will be made to the drive.

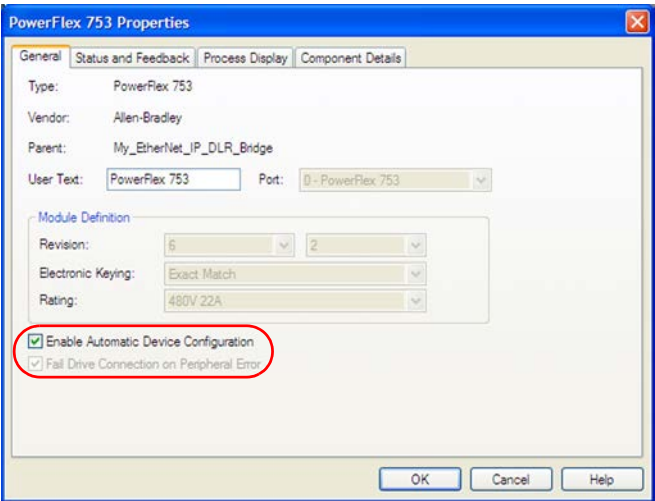
Electronic Keying for HIMs and serial converters (1203-SSS and 1203-USB) are disabled by default. These are typically temporary devices or used for monitoring purposes only and therefore “do not matter” if they are present or not. You still have the option to select these to other Keying selections if desired.

4. Click OK when finished.

**TIP** When using version 4.02 (or later) Drive AOPs, there is no need to perform step 5 through step 9. Instead, skip to step 10.


5. Click the Drive tab.


6. Click the Port Properties icon  to open the Properties dialog box.



There are two checkboxes related to ADC.

Checkbox Selection	Description
Enable Automatic Device Configuration	See the Important note on <a href="#">page 68</a> and, depending on the Drive AOP version being used, <a href="#">Version 4.01 Drive Add-on Profiles (AOPs) on page 68</a> or <a href="#">Version 4.02 (or later) Drive Add-on Profiles (AOPs) on page 69</a> for additional information about ADC use and Logix behavior. ADC is disabled when unchecked, or enabled when checked.
Fail Drive Connection on Peripheral Error	This selection is available only for peripherals. If you want to be sure that the correct peripheral is present with the correct configuration before the controller connects to the drive, check this box. If the peripheral is not essential to your use of the drive (for example, a HIM that may or may not be present all of the time), uncheck this box. Note that when a failure occurs, RSLogix software will show both a configuration on Port 0 (drive) and Port 'xx' (peripheral) error.

7. When finished, click OK.
8. Perform all previous steps for each peripheral in the treeview on the Drive tab.
- a. Select the peripheral in the treeview.
  - b. Click the Port Properties icon  to open the Properties dialog box.
9. When finished configuring the drive and peripherals, click OK to close the Module Properties dialog box for the drive.




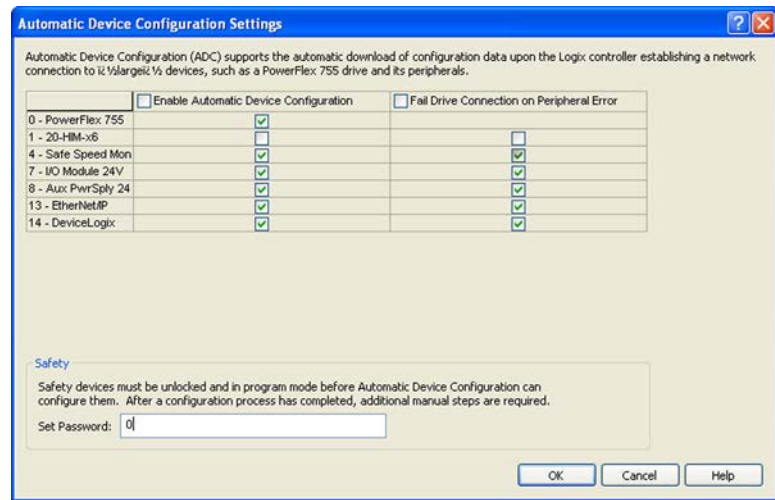
**ATTENTION:** If you manually download any configuration changes to the drive, the next time the Logix controller establishes an I/O connection with the drive will still trigger an ADC download. This synchronizes the configuration signatures in the controller and drive, and prevents future ADC downloads from occurring unless a configuration change was made.

**TIP**                      When using version 4.01 Drive AOPs, skip to step 13.

10. Click the Drive tab.



11. Click the ADC icon  to open the ADC Settings dialog box.



The ADC Settings dialog box provides a single location for ADC configuration of the drive's ports. Global checkboxes at the top of each column checks or unchecks the entire column. Ports can also be turned on/off individually. See the checkbox selection information in step 3 for additional details.

The Safety section in the lower part of the ADC Settings dialog box will only be displayed if a Safe Speed Monitor Module is present.

12. Click OK when finished.
13. Perform all previous steps for each additional PowerFlex 750-Series drive.

14. Save your RSLogix 5000 project and download the project to the Logix controller.

---

**IMPORTANT** Note that some parameters can affect the minimum/maximum of other parameters and can cause the settings of these parameters to be “out of range.” This, in turn, will cause ADC to fail with a module fault (code 16#0010) “Mode or state of module does not allow object to perform requested service.”

For example, drive Parameters 520 - [Max Fwd Speed] and 521 - [Max Rev Speed] affect the minimum/maximum of the following drive parameters:

- 329 - [Alternate Manual Reference Analog High]
- 547 - [Speed Reference A Analog High]
- 552 - [Speed Reference B Analog High]
- 564 - [Digital Input Manual Reference Analog High]
- 571...577 - [Preset Speed 1...7]
- 602 - [Trim Reference A Analog High]
- 606 - [Trim Reference B Analog High]

Setting drive Parameter 520 or 521 to a lower value could cause the settings in the above parameters to become “out of range.” If you adjust Parameter 520 or 521, check the above parameters and make any necessary updates to verify they are “in range.”

**NOTE:** It is recommended to review all parameters needed for your application to verify that they are “in range.” When using version 4.02 (or later) Drive AOPs, a yellow highlight and text notification in the Parameters Linear List editor appears to identify out of range parameters.

---

### *ADC and Logix Memory*

Starting in RSLogix 5000 software, version 16.00, drive configuration settings have been stored in the project's ACD file which is downloaded and stored in the controller. Configuration settings for ADC-capable devices contain additional port and scripting information to choreograph the download process, so additional Logix memory is used compared with PowerFlex 750-Series drives in RSLogix 5000 software, version 16.00...19.00 systems. Note these examples of memory usage:

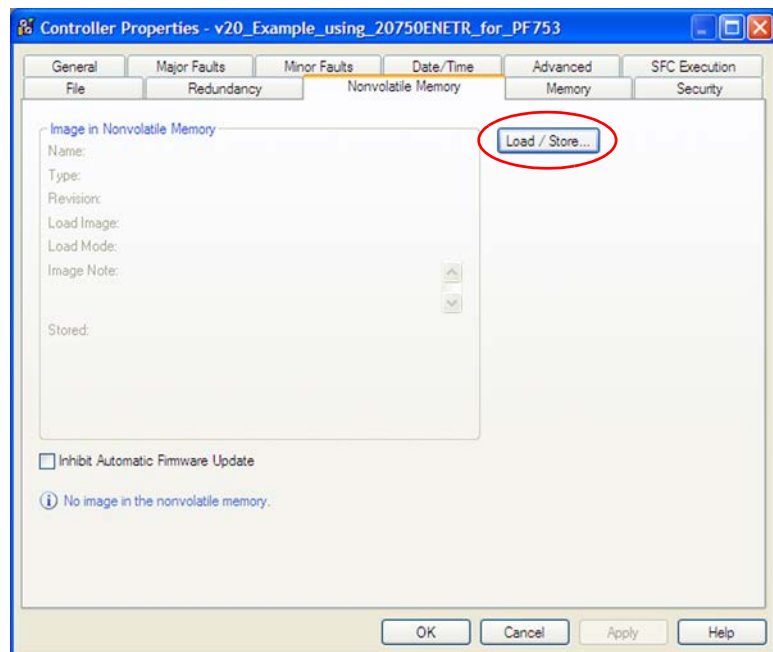
- A PowerFlex 755 drive with no option modules, minimal parameters changed from defaults, and no DeviceLogix program consumes approximately 8.5 kilobytes of Logix memory per drive.
- A PowerFlex 755 drive with four option modules, approximately 50 changed parameters, and a 32-block DeviceLogix program consumes approximately 25 kilobytes of Logix memory per drive.

The majority of Logix controllers have megabytes of memory available, so this typically should not be an issue. You can monitor Logix memory usage in RSLogix 5000 software. From the Controller Properties dialog box, click the Memory tab.

*Storing the Drive's and Peripherals' Firmware in the Logix Controller (Firmware Supervisor)*

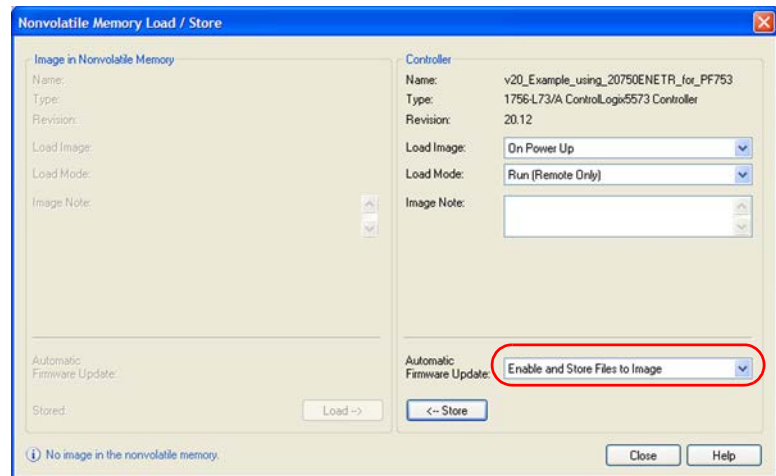
The Logix Firmware Supervisor function has been extended to provide firmware updates for the peripherals connected to the drive. You must be online and in program mode with the controller to load/store the firmware supervisor settings. To configure the controller to check and refresh the correct firmware for the drive and peripherals, perform the following steps.

1. Verify that "Exact Match" keying is selected in the drive's and peripherals' properties dialog boxes.
  - a. Click the General tab to view the drive's keying.
  - b. Right-click each peripheral on the Drive tab and choose Properties to view the peripheral's keying.
2. Verify that ControlFLASH firmware kits for each revision of firmware for each device that should be stored in the controller have been installed on the computer running RSLogix 5000 software.
3. Verify that a CompactFlash or other storage card has been installed in the controller.
4. Use RSLogix 5000 software to go online with the controller in Program mode.
5. Download your program if you have not done so already.
6. In the treeview, right-click the controller folder at the top of the Controller Organizer and choose Properties.
7. On the Controller Properties dialog box, click the Nonvolatile Memory tab.



8. Click Load/Store.

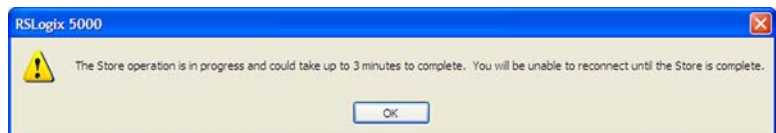
The Nonvolatile Memory Load/Store dialog box appears.



9. From the Automatic Firmware Update pull-down menu, choose Enable and Store Files to Image.
10. Click <-- Store.

You may see two different continue confirmation dialog boxes relating to communication disruptions and erasure of the current contents of the storage card. If okay, click Yes on either dialog box.

11. RSLogix 5000 software will go to the Offline state, and the following dialog box will appear.



Wait a short period of time for the store operation to complete, and then attempt to go online with the controller again.

### *Special Considerations When Using a DeviceLogix Program*

There are special considerations when a PowerFlex 750-Series drive has ADC enabled and is running a DeviceLogix program. ADC will download the DeviceLogix program after the drive is replaced but, by default, the program will be disabled (not running) since the factory default setting is “Logic disabled” for a new replacement drive.

If you want the DeviceLogix program to be enabled (run) after ADC, you have to configure the drive in your project to do this by performing the following steps.

1. Select the PowerFlex 750-Series drive and click the Drive tab.
2. Select the DeviceLogix Port in the device tree.
3. Click the DeviceLogix icon to open the DeviceLogix Editor.
4. From the Edit menu, choose Recovery Mode.

5. Click Enabled to enable DeviceLogix after ADC.



If you do not set up the automatic method described above to enable DeviceLogix after ADC, you can still do so manually. To enable the DeviceLogix program, set DeviceLogix Parameter 53 - [DLX Operation] to “0” (Enable Logic) by using one of these methods:

- An explicit message in the Logix program to write to the parameter.
- A HIM or drive software tool to set the parameter.

Note that after setting DeviceLogix Parameter 53 to “0” (Enable Logic), the value will be changed by the drive to “6” (Logic Enabled) to indicate operation status.

---

**IMPORTANT** Do not set DeviceLogix parameter 53 - [DLX Operation] to “0” (Enable Logic) in the Add-on Profile configuration before saving the configuration to the controller. This setting would lock the module and prevent writing the higher numbered parameters, thus causing the ADC download to fail.

---

### *Special Considerations When Using a 20-750-S1 Safe Speed Monitor Module*

There are special considerations when using ADC with the 20-750-S1 Safe Speed Monitor Module. Safety requires manual intervention by the user before the drive can become operational. Although a manual ‘step’ is required, ADC can still be used.

---

**IMPORTANT** Firmware Supervisor cannot be used to update the 20-750-S1 Safe Speed Monitor Module firmware. This is due to unique upgrade components with its safety core. It can be manually upgraded using ControlFLASH, a 1203-USB Serial Converter, and the appropriate upgrade file.

---

In addition to the configuration of the Safe Speed Monitor Module, the password for the Module is stored in the configuration script in the controller and used as part of the connection process to allow the configuration stored in the controller to be downloaded to the Module. This password will need to be entered into the profile for the Safe Speed Monitor Module in the drive’s Module Properties dialog box in RSLogix 5000 software. This password value is the value entered in parameter 13 of the Safe Speed Monitor Module on controller download to the Module, which is required by procedure to be recorded by the user for future use when interacting with the Module. When using this password in the future, it would be entered into parameter 1 for the Safe Speed Monitor

Module to allow either locking via parameter 5 or password changing via parameters 13 and 17.

---

**IMPORTANT** Do not set Safe Speed Monitor Module parameter 5 [Lock State] to “1” (Lock); or parameter 6 [Operating Mode] to “1” (Run) in the Add-on Profile configuration before saving the configuration to the controller. Setting these parameters would lock the Module and prevent writing the higher numbered parameters, thus causing the ADC download to fail. These two parameters need to be changed manually after performing an upload or after the ADC download.

---

The following manual steps may be needed to take an existing configured Safe Speed Monitor Module (for example, replacing the drive and reusing the existing Module) out of Run mode to allow the controller to download the configuration to the Safe Speed Monitor Module. (Note that these manual steps may need to be performed with the Ethernet cable disconnected from the drive as the controller’s attempts to configure the Safe Speed Monitor Module will include locking out writes from other sources, such as the HIM).

1. Inhibit the drive’s connection—or disconnect the communication card through which the controller is trying to configure the Safe Speed Monitor Module using ADC.
2. Set Safe Speed Monitor Module parameter 1 [Password] to the Module’s current password.
3. Set Safe Speed Monitor Module parameter 5 [Lock State] to “0” (Unlock).
4. Set Safe Speed Monitor Module parameter 6 [Operating Mode] to “0” (Program).
5. If the Safe Speed Monitor Module’s current password is not “0,” change the password of the Module to “0.”
6. Set Safe Speed Monitor Module parameter 1 [Password] to the Module’s current password.
7. Set Safe Speed Monitor Module parameter 13 [New Password] to “0.”
8. Set Safe Speed Monitor Module parameter 17 [Password Command] to “1” (Change PW).
9. Uninhibit the connection or reconnect the cable.

The controller can download the new configuration, including the new password.

The following manual steps are required to put the Safe Speed Monitor Module into Run mode, generate a configuration signature, and lock the configuration. These steps also need to be performed when replacing the Safe Speed Monitor Module with a new, “out of the box” unit.

1. Set Safe Speed Monitor Module parameter 6 [Operating Mode] to “1” (Run).

A configuration signature is generated.

2. Access Safe Speed Monitor Module parameter 10 [Signature ID] and record the configuration signature value stored in this parameter.
3. Enter the current password for the Safe Speed Monitor Module into parameter 1 [Password].
4. Set Safe Speed Monitor Module parameter 5 [Lock State] to “1” (Lock).

These steps can be performed with a HIM, drive software configuration tool, or via an HMI that can trigger explicit message writes from the controller program. To meet SIL CL3, PLc, or Cat 4 requirements, the user must verify that the correct configuration is locked in the Safe Speed Monitor Module. See the drive and Safe Speed Monitor Module documentation for more information.

### *Monitoring ADC Progress*

The time it takes for the ADC process to complete will vary from seconds to several minutes depending on several factors:

- The number of peripherals enabled for ADC.
- If a configuration signature for the drive/peripheral indicates a configuration download needs to be performed for the given port.
- Whether Firmware Supervisor is enabled and needs to upgrade the drive and/or any peripherals.
- If a 20-750-S1 Safe Speed Monitor option module, which requires a manual ‘step’ in its configuration process, is used.
- If a DeviceLogix program (Port 14) is used.

With the Firmware Supervisor enabled, startup can take quite a long time. With all firmware and parameters being updated, it takes approximately 45...55 minutes.

---


**IMPORTANT**    ADC can automatically reset the drive as part of the configuration process. This is done because some parameters require a reset before they take effect. If a drive is being replaced with an out-of-the-box drive, you will typically see at least two resets during the ADC process—one for the parameters in the drive (Port 0) and, for a PowerFlex 755 drive, one for the parameters in the embedded EtherNet/IP adapter (Port 13).

---

See the PowerFlex 750-Series AC Drive Programming Manual, publication [750-PM001](#), for information about the drive status indicators. An operational drive in a running Logix system will have the following status indicator states.

Status Indicator	Color	State	Description
STS (Drive)	Green	Flashing	Drive ready but not running, and no faults are present.
		Steady	Drive running, no faults are present.
NET A	Green	Steady	Option module is operating and has at least one CIP connection (I/O or explicit).
NET B	Green	Flashing	Option module is transmitting on the network.

Additional information may also be displayed on the HIM if it is present (upgrade status, and so forth).

If ADC is unsuccessful, the NET A status indicator will be flashing green or off, and RSLogix 5000 software can be used to get additional information. When online, the drive at issue should have a yellow triangle  next to it in the RSLogix 5000 project's I/O Configuration folder. Double-click the drive to open the Drive AOP. The Connection tab will show a Module Fault code and the Drive tab will identify issues to the Port level.

ADC Status Field	Description
Running	Any desired configuration is complete, and the I/O connection is running.
Configuring	ADC is currently updating the configuration of the drive or one of its peripherals. Clicking the Connection tab will show which device is being updated.
Firmware Updating	ADC is currently updating the firmware of the drive or one of its peripherals. Clicking the Drive tab will show which device is being updated.
Inhibited	The program has the connection inhibited. You can uninhibit the connection on the Connection tab.
Faulted	A problem is preventing the controller from connecting to the drive (for example, the device at the IP address provided is not a PowerFlex 750-Series drive). Clicking the Connection tab will show the cause (Module Fault). Clicking the Drive tab may also show the faulted ports.

Examples of potential issues/solutions are shown in the following table.

Issue	Solution
"Compatible module" keying selected, but replacement drive or peripheral has an earlier firmware revision than the failed device.	Replace device with a revision that is later than or equal to the failed device. If necessary, use ControlFLASH to upgrade the replacement device first to an acceptable revision level.
Peripheral is required for connection ("Fail Drive Connection on Peripheral Error" was checked), but it is missing.	Add required peripheral or remove peripheral from RSLogix 5000 project for the drive and download project to the controller.
A Safe Speed Monitor Module is used.	A manual 'step' is required to enter the safety password and validate the system. See the section <a href="#">Special Considerations When Using a 20-750-S1 Safe Speed Monitor Module on page 77</a> for additional information.
Parameter "out of range" error—ADC wrote a value to a parameter that was out of range (typically would only occur during initial commissioning of a drive system).	Use any available drive software tool to view a linear list of changed parameters to see if the configured value is outside the minimum/maximum value. Version 4.02 (or later) Drive AOPs are the preferred tool and will highlight any out of range parameter in the Linear List editor.

## Using the RSLogix 5000 Generic Profile, All Versions

We recommend that you only use the basic RSLogix 5000 software Generic Profile for any of the following reasons:

- A specific drive profile in other versions of RSLogix 5000 software is unavailable.
- Users are already familiar with a Generic Profile and do not want to convert an existing project to a drive Add-on Profile (RSLogix 5000 software, version 16.00 or later).

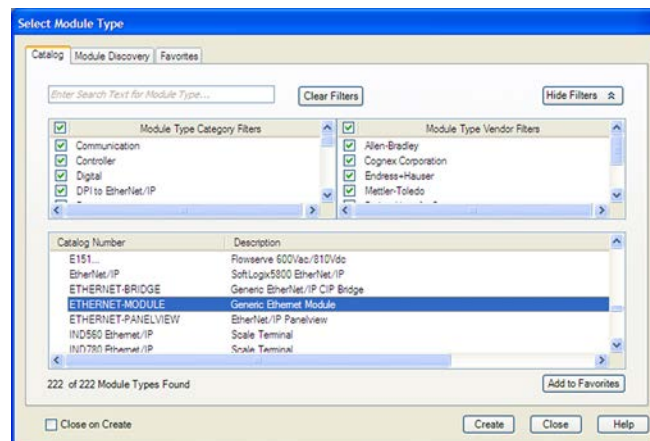


- A project must maintain specific revision level control.
- The controller cannot be taken offline. RSLogix 5000 software, version 16.00 or later, enables the drive Generic Profile to be added while the controller is online and in the Run mode.

### *Adding the Drive/Option Module to the I/O Configuration*

To transmit data between the bridge and the drive, you must add the drive as a child device to the parent bridge.

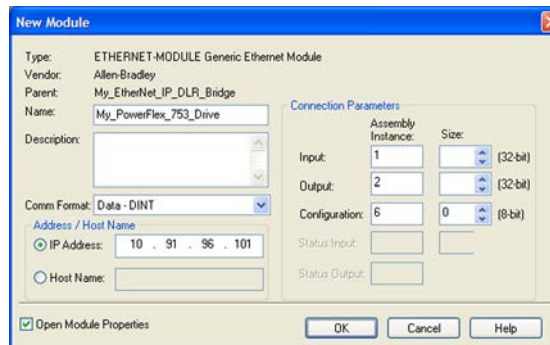
1. In the treeview, right-click the bridge and choose New Module to display the Select Module dialog box.



In our example, we right-click the 1756-EN2TR/A bridge.

2. Expand the Communications group to display all of the available communication modules.
3. Select “ETHERNET-MODULE” from the list to configure the drive and its connected EtherNet/IP option module
4. Click OK.

The drive’s New Module dialog box appears.



5. Edit the following information about the drive and option module.

Box	Setting
Name	A name to identify the drive and option module.
Description	Optional – description of the drive/option module.
Comm Format	<b>Data - DINT</b> (This setting formats the data in 32-bit words.)
IP Address	The IP address of the option module.
Open Module Properties	When this box is checked, clicking OK opens additional module properties dialog boxes to further configure the drive/option module. When unchecked, clicking OK closes the drive's New Module dialog box. For this example, check this box.

6. Under Connection Parameters, edit the following information.

Box	Assembly Instance	Size
Input	<b>1</b> (This value is required.)	The value will vary based on the number of <i>Host [DL From Net xx]</i> parameters used for your application (see details below).
Output	<b>2</b> (This value is required.)	The value will vary based on the number of <i>Host [DL To Net xx]</i> parameters used for your application (see details below).
Configuration	<b>6</b> (This value is required.)	<b>0</b> (This value is required.)

Enter the number of 32-bit words that are required for your I/O in the Input Size and Output Size boxes. Since the option module always uses the 32-bit Logic Status, 32-bit Feedback, and a 32-bit word dedicated for memory allocation of the Generic Ethernet module profile, at least three 32-bit words must be set for the Input Size. The option module also uses the 32-bit Logic Command and 32-bit Reference, requiring at least two 32-bit words for the Output Size. If any or all of the drive's sixteen 32-bit Datalinks are used (see [Selecting Master-Slave or Peer-to-Peer Hierarchy \(Adapter mode only\) on page 39](#) or [Custom Peer I/O Configuration on page 42](#)), the Input and Output Size settings must be increased accordingly.

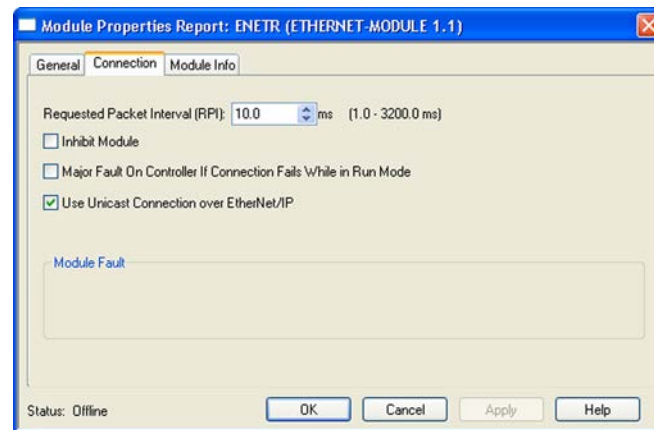
- **Input Size:** Start with 3 words and add 1 word for each Datalink used to read data. For example, if 3 Datalinks—*Host [DL To Net xx]* parameters—will be used to read drive or peripheral parameters, add 3 words to the required 3 words for a total of 6 words. You can use option module **Device Parameter 04 - [DLs To Net Act]** to check the total number of Datalinks being used. Word 0 is a pad word, Word 1 is Logic Status, Word 2 is Speed Feedback, Word 3 is DL To Net 01, and so forth (see [Figure 13](#)).
- **Output Size:** Start with 2 words and add 1 word for each Datalink used to write data. For example, if 7 Datalinks—*Host [DL From Net xx]* parameters—will be used to write to drive or peripheral parameters, add 7 words to the required 2 words for a total of 9 words. You can use option module **Device Parameter 03 - [DLs From Net Act]** to check the total number of Datalinks being used. Word 0 is Logic Command, Word 1 is Speed Reference, Word 2 is DL From Net 01, and so forth (see [Figure 14](#)).

For the example in this manual, all 16 *Host* [DL From Net xx] and all 16 *Host* [DL To Net xx] are used, resulting in an Input Size of “19” and an Output Size of “18.”

7. After setting the information in the drive’s New Module dialog box, click OK.

The Module Properties dialog box appears.

8. Click the Connection tab.



9. In the “Requested Packet Interval (RPI)” box, set the value to 2.0 milliseconds or greater (default is 20.0 milliseconds).

This value determines the maximum interval that a controller should use to move data to and from the option module. To conserve bandwidth, use higher values for communicating with low priority devices.

The “Inhibit Module” box, when checked, inhibits the module from communicating with the RSLogix 5000 project. When the “Major Fault On” box is checked, a major controller fault will occur when the module’s connection fails while the controller is in the Run Mode. For this example, leave the “Inhibit Module” and “Major Fault On” boxes unchecked.

Unicast support has been added to RSLogix 5000 software, version 18.00 (or later). Unicast is recommended whenever possible. For the benefits of unicast operation, see [Preparing for an Installation on page 17](#).

10. Click OK.

The new node (“My\_PowerFlex\_753\_Drive” in this example) now appears under the bridge (“My\_EtherNet\_IP\_DLR\_Bridge” in this example) in the I/O Configuration folder. If you double-click the Input and Output Controller Tags ([Figure 13](#) and [Figure 14](#)), you will see that module-defined data types and tags have been automatically created. After you save and download the configuration, these tags allow you to access the Input and Output data of the drive via the controller’s ladder logic.

Figure 13 - Input Image Controller Tags

Name	△	Data Type	Description
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I		AB:ETHERNET...	
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data		DINT[19]	
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[0]		DINT	Pad Word
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[1]		DINT	Logic Status
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[2]		DINT	Speed Feedback
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[3]		DINT	DL To Net 01
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[4]		DINT	DL To Net 02
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[5]		DINT	DL To Net 03
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[6]		DINT	DL To Net 04
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[7]		DINT	DL To Net 05
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[8]		DINT	DL To Net 06
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[9]		DINT	DL To Net 07
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[10]		DINT	DL To Net 08
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[11]		DINT	DL To Net 09
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[12]		DINT	DL To Net 10
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[13]		DINT	DL To Net 11
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[14]		DINT	DL To Net 12
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[15]		DINT	DL To Net 13
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[16]		DINT	DL To Net 14
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[17]		DINT	DL To Net 15
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[18]		DINT	DL To Net 16

Figure 14 - Output Image Controller Tags

Name	△	Data Type	Description
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O		AB:ETHERNET...	
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data		DINT[18]	
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[0]		DINT	Logic Command
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[1]		DINT	Speed Reference
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[2]		DINT	DL From Net 01
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[3]		DINT	DL From Net 02
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[4]		DINT	DL From Net 03
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[5]		DINT	DL From Net 04
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[6]		DINT	DL From Net 05
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[7]		DINT	DL From Net 06
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[8]		DINT	DL From Net 07
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[9]		DINT	DL From Net 08
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[10]		DINT	DL From Net 09
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[11]		DINT	DL From Net 10
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[12]		DINT	DL From Net 11
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[13]		DINT	DL From Net 12
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[14]		DINT	DL From Net 13
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[15]		DINT	DL From Net 14
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[16]		DINT	DL From Net 15
My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[17]		DINT	DL From Net 16

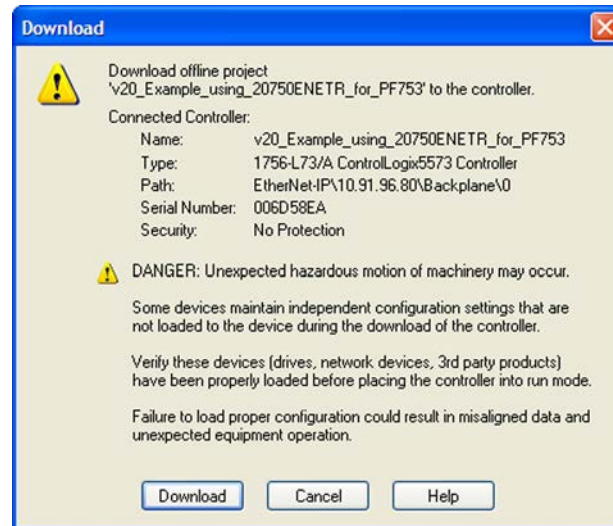
### *Saving the I/O Configuration to the Controller*

After adding the bridge and drive/option module to the I/O configuration, you must download the configuration to the controller. You should also save the configuration to a file on your computer.

**TIP** When using RSLogix 5000 software, version 16.00 or later, you can add the I/O configuration of a Generic Profile while the controller is online and in the Run mode.

1. From the Communications menu in the RSLogix 5000 dialog box, choose Download.

The Download dialog box appears.



**TIP**

If a message box reports that RSLogix 5000 software is unable to go online, find your controller in the Who Active dialog box. From the Communications menu, choose Who Active. After finding and selecting the controller, click Set Project Path to establish the path. If your controller does not appear, you need to add or configure the EtherNet/IP driver with RSLinx software. See [Using RSLinx Classic Software on page 53](#) and RSLinx online help for details.

2. Click Download to download the configuration to the controller.

When the download is successfully completed, RSLogix 5000 software goes into the Online mode and the I/O OK box in the upper-left of the dialog box should be steady green.

3. From the File menu, choose Save.

If this is the first time you saved the project, the Save As dialog box appears. Navigate to a folder, type a file name, and click Save to save the configuration to a file on your computer.

4. Any Datalinks that were enabled in the controller and option module during I/O configuration must also be configured in the drive. Each Datalink being used must be assigned to a specific parameter in the drive or connected peripheral (see [Selecting Master-Slave or Peer-to-Peer Hierarchy \(Adapter mode only\) on page 39](#) or [Custom Peer I/O Configuration on page 42](#)). If this is not done, the controller will receive or send placeholder data instead of actual drive or peripheral parameter values.
5. Place the controller in Remote Run or Run Mode.

## **Notes:**

## Using the I/O (Adapter mode only)

This chapter provides information and examples that explain how to control, configure, and monitor a PowerFlex 750-Series drive using the configured I/O.

Topic	Page
<a href="#">About I/O Messaging</a>	87
<a href="#">Understanding the I/O Image</a>	88
<a href="#">Using Logic Command/Status</a>	89
<a href="#">Using Reference/Feedback</a>	89
<a href="#">Using Datalinks</a>	90
<a href="#">Example Ladder Logic Program Information</a>	91
<a href="#">ControlLogix Controller Example</a>	92



**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. The examples in this publication are intended solely for purposes of example. There are many variables and requirements with any application. Rockwell Automation, Inc. does not assume responsibility or liability (to include intellectual property liability) for actual use of the examples shown in this publication.

### About I/O Messaging

On CIP-based networks, including EtherNet/IP, I/O connections are used to transfer the data which controls the PowerFlex drive and sets its Reference. I/O can also be used to transfer data to and from Datalinks in PowerFlex 750-Series drives.

The option module includes the Logic Command, Logic Status, Reference, Feedback, and memory allocation for the Generic Ethernet module profile (all as 32-bit words) in the controller's I/O image. This basic I/O must always be configured in the EtherNet bridge using RSLogix 5000 software. Additional I/O, if needed, can be set using up to 16 Datalinks to write data and/or up to 16 Datalinks to read data. When using any combination of these Datalinks, add one 32-bit word for each Datalink to the basic I/O Input Size and/or Output Size.

[Chapter 3](#), Configuring the Option Module, and [Chapter 4](#), Configuring the I/O, discuss how to configure the option module and controller on the network for the required I/O. The Glossary defines the different options. This chapter discusses how to use I/O after you have configured the option module and controller.



## Understanding the I/O Image

The terms *input* and *output* are defined from the controller's point of view. Therefore, output I/O is data that is produced by the controller and consumed by the option module. Input I/O is status data that is produced by the option module and consumed as input by the controller. The I/O image will vary based on the following:

- How many of the drive's 32-bit Datalinks (*Host DL From Net 01-16* and *Host DL To Net 01-16*) are used.
- **ControlLogix/CompactLogix Controllers only**—The drive profile used in RSLogix 5000 software (drive Add-on Profile in version 16.00 or later, or Generic Profile in all versions).

## ControlLogix Controller Image

Since the drive Add-on Profile in RSLogix 5000 software, version 16.00 or later, provides descriptive controller tags, the I/O image (tag size and location) is automatically configured based on the drive being used. When using the RSLogix 5000 Generic Profile, however, controller tags are not descriptive or defined.

[Table 3](#) shows the I/O image when using all of the 32-bit Datalinks.

**Table 3 - ControlLogix Controller I/O Image for PowerFlex 750-Series Drives (32-bit Logic Command/Status, Reference/Feedback, and Datalinks)**

DINT	Output I/O	Input I/O Using...			
		DINT	Drive Add-on Profile	DINT	Generic Profile
0	Logic Command	0	Logic Status	0	Padword
1	Reference	1	Feedback	1	Logic Status
2	DL From Net 01	2	DL To Net 01	2	Feedback
3	DL From Net 02	3	DL To Net 02	3	DL To Net 01
4	DL From Net 03	4	DL To Net 03	4	DL To Net 02
5	DL From Net 04	5	DL To Net 04	5	DL To Net 03
6	DL From Net 05	6	DL To Net 05	6	DL To Net 04
7	DL From Net 06	7	DL To Net 06	7	DL To Net 05
8	DL From Net 07	8	DL To Net 07	8	DL To Net 06
9	DL From Net 08	9	DL To Net 08	9	DL To Net 07
10	DL From Net 09	10	DL To Net 09	10	DL To Net 08
11	DL From Net 10	11	DL To Net 10	11	DL To Net 09
12	DL From Net 11	12	DL To Net 11	12	DL To Net 10
13	DL From Net 12	13	DL To Net 12	13	DL To Net 11
14	DL From Net 13	14	DL To Net 13	14	DL To Net 12
15	DL From Net 14	15	DL To Net 14	15	DL To Net 13
16	DL From Net 15	16	DL To Net 15	16	DL To Net 14
17	DL From Net 16	17	DL To Net 16	17	DL To Net 15
				18	DL To Net 16



## Using Logic Command/Status

The *Logic Command* is a 32-bit word of control data produced by the controller and consumed by the option module. The *Logic Status* is a 32-bit word of status data produced by the option module and consumed by the controller.

When using a ControlLogix controller, the Logic Command word is always DINT 0 in the output image and the Logic Status word is always:

- DINT 0 in the input image when using the drive Add-on Profile.
- DINT 1 when using the Generic Profile.

This manual contains the bit definitions for compatible products available at the time of publication in [Appendix D](#), Logic Command/Status Words: PowerFlex 750-Series Drives.

## Using Reference/Feedback

The *Reference* is a 32-bit REAL (floating point) piece of control data produced by the controller and consumed by the option module. The *Feedback* is a 32-bit REAL (floating point) piece of status data produced by the option module and consumed by the controller.

When using a ControlLogix controller, the 32-bit REAL Reference is always DINT 1 in the output image (see [Table 3](#)) and the 32-bit REAL Feedback is always:

- DINT 1 in the input image when using the drive Add-on Profile.
- DINT 2 when using the Generic Profile.

When using a drive Add-on Profile, the Reference and Feedback are automatically formatted properly and displayed as a controller tag. When using the Generic Profile, the I/O image is integer-based and the Reference and Feedback are floating point. Because of this, a COP (Copy) instruction or User Defined Data Type (UDDT) is required to correctly write values to the Reference and read values from the Feedback. See the ladder logic program examples in [Figure 20](#) and [Figure 21](#).

### TIP

When using the drive Add-on Profile, the controller tags for Reference and Feedback are automatically and properly formatted. This eliminates the need for data conversion using COP (copy) instructions or a UDDT to copy the DINT data into a REAL word.

The Reference and Feedback 32-bit REAL value represents drive speed. The scaling for the speed Reference and Feedback are dependent on drive Parameter 300 - [Speed Units]. For example, if Parameter 300 is set to Hz, a 32-bit REAL Reference value of “30.0” would equal a Reference of 30.0 Hz. If Parameter 300 is set to RPM, a 32-bit REAL Reference value of “1020.5” would equal a Reference of 1020.5 RPM. Note that the commanded maximum speed can never exceed the value of drive Parameter 520 - [Max Fwd Speed]. [Table 4](#) shows example References and their results for a PowerFlex 750-Series drive that has its:

- Parameter 300 - [Speed Units] set to Hz.
- Parameter 37 - [Maximum Freq] set to 130 Hz.
- Parameter 520 - [Max Fwd Speed] set to 60 Hz.

When Parameter 300 - [Speed Units] is set to RPM, the other parameters are also in RPM.

**Table 4 - PowerFlex 750-Series Drive Example Speed Reference/Feedback Scaling**

Network Reference Value	Speed Command Value <sup>(2)</sup>	Output Speed	Network Feedback Value
130.0	130 Hz	60 Hz <sup>(3)</sup>	60.0
65.0	65 Hz	60 Hz <sup>(3)</sup>	60.0
32.5	32.5 Hz	32.5 Hz	32.5
0.0	0 Hz	0 Hz	0.0
-32.5 <sup>(1)</sup>	32.5 Hz	32.5 Hz	32.5

(1) The effects of values less than 0.0 depend on whether the PowerFlex 750-Series drive uses a bipolar or unipolar direction mode. See the drive documentation for details.

(2) For this example, drive Parameter 300 - [Speed Units] is set to Hz.

(3) The drive runs at 60 Hz instead of 130 Hz or 65 Hz because drive Parameter 520 - [Max Fwd Speed] sets 60 Hz as the maximum speed.

## Using Datalinks

A Datalink is a mechanism used by PowerFlex drives to transfer data to and from the controller. Datalinks allow a drive parameter value to be read or written to without using an Explicit Message. When enabled, each Datalink occupies one 32-bit word in a ControlLogix controller.

The following rules apply when using PowerFlex 750-Series drive Datalinks:

- The target of a Datalink can be any *Host* parameter, including those of a peripheral. For example, drive parameter 535 - [Accel Time 1] can be the target of any or all option modules installed in the drive.
- The data passed through the drive's Datalink mechanism is determined by the settings of **Host Parameters 01...16** - [DL From Net 01-16] and **Host Parameters 17...32** - [DL To Net 01-16].

---

**IMPORTANT** A reset is always required after configuring Datalinks so that the changes take effect.

---

- When an I/O connection that includes Datalinks is active, those Datalinks being used are locked and cannot be changed until that I/O connection becomes idle or inactive.
- When you use a Datalink to change a value, the value is NOT written to the Nonvolatile Storage (NVS). The value is stored in volatile memory and lost when the drive loses power. Thus, use Datalinks when you need to change a value of a parameter frequently.

Datalinks for PowerFlex 750-Series drive peripherals (embedded EtherNet/IP adapter on PowerFlex 755 drives only and option modules such as an encoder or a communication module) are locked when the peripheral has an I/O connection with a controller. When a controller has an I/O connection to the drive, the drive does not allow a reset to defaults, configuration download or anything else that

could change the makeup of the I/O connection in a running system. The I/O connection with the controller must first be disabled to allow changes to the respective Datalinks.

Depending on the controller being used, the I/O connection can be disabled by doing the following:

- Inhibiting the module in RSLogix 5000 software
- Putting the controller in Program mode
- Placing the scanner in idle mode
- Disconnecting the drive from the network

DeviceLogix Datalinks are also locked while the DeviceLogix program is running. The DeviceLogix program must first be disabled to allow changes to the Datalinks. Set DeviceLogix parameter 53 - [DLX Operation] to “DisableLogic” to disable the logic (the parameter value will then change to “LogicDisabld”).

**TIP**

When using the drive Add-on Profile, the controller tags for Reference and Feedback to Datalinks are automatically and properly formatted.

If a Generic Profile is used, a COP (Copy) instruction or a UDDT is needed—for REAL parameters, speed Reference, and speed Feedback only—to copy the DINT data into a REAL word for input data conversion. For output data conversion, a COP (Copy) instruction or UDDT is needed—for REAL parameters, speed Reference, and speed Feedback only—to copy the REAL data into a DINT word. To determine whether a parameter is a 32-bit integer (DINT) or a REAL data type, see the Data Type column in the chapter containing parameters in the PowerFlex 750-Series AC Drives Programming Manual (publication [750-PM001](#)).

## Example Ladder Logic Program Information

The example ladder logic programs in the sections of this chapter are intended for and operate PowerFlex 750-Series drives.

### Functions of the Example Programs

The example programs enable you to do the following:

- Receive Logic Status information from the drive.
- Send a Logic Command to control the drive (for example, start, stop).
- Send a Reference to the drive and receive Feedback from the drive.
- Send/receive Datalink data to/from the drive.

### Logic Command/Status Words

These examples use the Logic Command word and Logic Status word for PowerFlex 750-Series drives. See [Appendix D](#), Logic Command/Status Words: PowerFlex 750-Series Drives to view details.

# ControlLogix Controller Example

This section includes information when using an RSLogix 5000 Drive Add-on Profile or a Generic Profile.

## Creating Ladder Logic Using the RSLogix 5000 Drive Add-on Profiles, Version 16.00 or Later

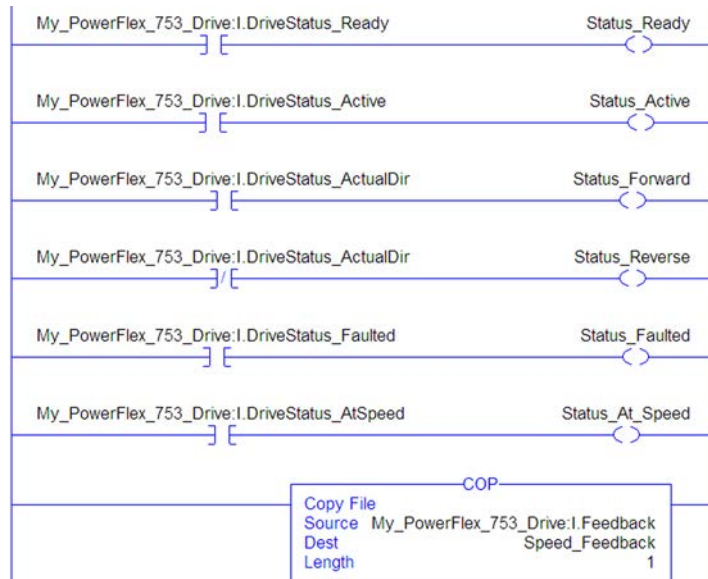
Since the drive Add-on Profile automatically created descriptive controller tags ([Figure 11](#)) for the entire I/O image in [Chapter 4](#), you can use these tags to directly control and monitor the drive without creating any ladder logic program. However, if you intend to use Human Machine Interface devices (PanelView, and so forth) to operate the drive and view its status, you will need to create descriptive user-defined Program tags ([Figure 15](#)) and a ladder logic program that will pass the Controller tag data to the Program tags.

Figure 15 - ControlLogix Program Tags for Drive Add-on Profile Ladder Logic Program Example

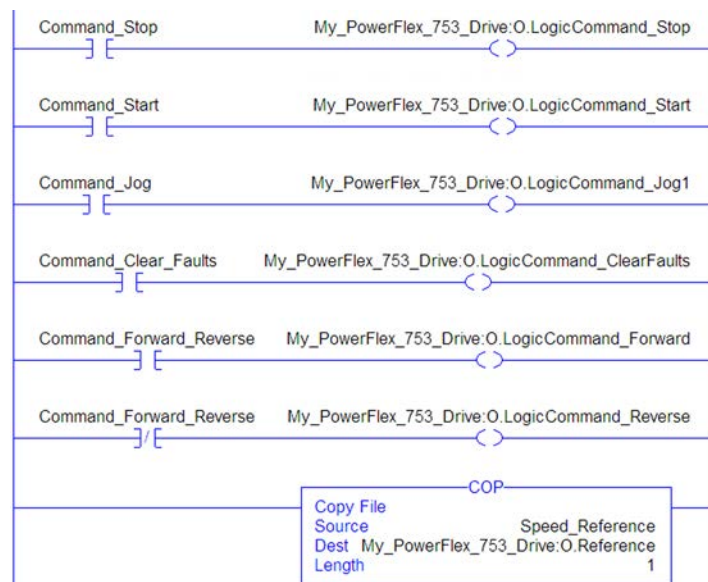
Name	Value	Data Type
Status_Reverse	0	BOOL
Status_Ready	0	BOOL
Status_Forward	0	BOOL
Status_Faulted	0	BOOL
Status_At_Speed	0	BOOL
Status_Active	0	BOOL
Speed_Reference	0.0	REAL
Speed_Feedback	0.0	REAL
Command_Stop	0	BOOL
Command_Start	0	BOOL
Command_Jog	0	BOOL
Command_Forward_Reverse	0	BOOL
Command_Clear_Faults	0	BOOL

An example ladder logic program that uses the automatically-created descriptive Controller tags and passes their data to the user-defined Program tags is shown in [Figure 16](#) and [Figure 17](#). Note that the prefix for the drive Controller tags is determined by the name assigned when configuring the I/O ([Chapter 4](#)).

**Figure 16 - ControlLogix Controller Example Ladder Logic Program Using a Drive Add-on Profile for Logic Status/Feedback**



**Figure 17 - ControlLogix Controller Example Ladder Logic Program Using a Drive Add-on Profile for Logic Command/Reference**



## Creating Ladder Logic Using the RSLogix 5000 Generic Profile, All Versions

### *Option Module Parameter Settings for ControlLogix Controller Example*

These option module settings were used for the example ladder logic program in this section.

Option Module Host Parameter	Value	Description
01 - [DL From Net 01]	370	Points to drive Par. 370 - [Stop Mode A]
02 - [DL From Net 02]	371	Points to drive Par. 371 - [Stop Mode B]
03 - [DL From Net 03]	535	Points to drive Par. 535 - [Accel Time 1]
04 - [DL From Net 04]	536	Points to drive Par. 536 - [Accel Time 2]
05 - [DL From Net 05]	537	Points to drive Par. 537 - [Decel Time 1]
06 - [DL From Net 06]	538	Points to drive Par. 538 - [Decel Time 2]
07 - [DL From Net 07]	539	Points to drive Par. 539 - [Jog Acc Dec Time]
08 - [DL From Net 08]	556	Points to drive Par. 556 - [Jog Speed 1]
09 - [DL From Net 09]	557	Points to drive Par. 557 - [Jog Speed 2]
10 - [DL From Net 10]	571	Points to drive Par. 571 - [Preset Speed 1]
11 - [DL From Net 11]	572	Points to drive Par. 572 - [Preset Speed 2]
12 - [DL From Net 12]	573	Points to drive Par. 573 - [Preset Speed 3]
13 - [DL From Net 13]	574	Points to drive Par. 574 - [Preset Speed 4]
14 - [DL From Net 14]	575	Points to drive Par. 575 - [Preset Speed 5]
15 - [DL From Net 15]	576	Points to drive Par. 576 - [Preset Speed 6]
16 - [DL From Net 16]	577	Points to drive Par. 577 - [Preset Speed 7]
17 - [DL To Net 01]	370	Points to drive Par. 370 - [Stop Mode A]
18 - [DL To Net 02]	371	Points to drive Par. 371 - [Stop Mode B]
19 - [DL To Net 03]	535	Points to drive Par. 535 - [Accel Time 1]
20 - [DL To Net 04]	536	Points to drive Par. 536 - [Accel Time 2]
21 - [DL To Net 05]	537	Points to drive Par. 537 - [Decel Time 1]
22 - [DL To Net 06]	538	Points to drive Par. 538 - [Decel Time 2]
23 - [DL To Net 07]	539	Points to drive Par. 539 - [Jog Acc Dec Time]
24 - [DL To Net 08]	556	Points to drive Par. 556 - [Jog Speed 1]
25 - [DL To Net 09]	557	Points to drive Par. 557 - [Jog Speed 2]
26 - [DL To Net 10]	571	Points to drive Par. 571 - [Preset Speed 1]
27 - [DL To Net 11]	572	Points to drive Par. 572 - [Preset Speed 2]
28 - [DL To Net 12]	573	Points to drive Par. 573 - [Preset Speed 3]
29 - [DL To Net 13]	574	Points to drive Par. 574 - [Preset Speed 4]
30 - [DL To Net 14]	575	Points to drive Par. 575 - [Preset Speed 5]
31 - [DL To Net 15]	576	Points to drive Par. 576 - [Preset Speed 6]
32 - [DL To Net 16]	577	Points to drive Par. 577 - [Preset Speed 7]

#### **TIP**

The **Host [DL From Net xx]** parameters are inputs into the drive that come from controller outputs (for example, data to write to a drive parameter). The **Host [DL To Net xx]** parameters are outputs from the drive that go to controller inputs (for example, data to read a drive parameter).

### Controller Tags

When you add the option module and drive to the I/O configuration (Chapter 4), RSLogix 5000 software automatically creates generic (non-descriptive) controller tags. In this example program, the following controller tags are used.

	Name	Value	Data Type	Description
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:C	{...}	AB:ETHERNET...	
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I	{...}	AB:ETHERNET...	
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O	{...}	AB:ETHERNET...	

You can expand the Input and Output tags to reveal the input and output configuration. The Input tag for this example requires nineteen 32-bit words of data (Figure 18). The Output tag for this example program requires eighteen 32-bit words of data (Figure 19).

**Figure 18 - ControlLogix Controller Input Image for Drive Generic Profile Example Ladder Logic Program**

	Name	Data Type	Description
-	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I	AB:ETHERNET...	
-	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data	DINT[19]	
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[0]	DINT	Pad Word
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[1]	DINT	Logic Status
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[2]	DINT	Speed Feedback
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[3]	DINT	DL To Net 01
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[4]	DINT	DL To Net 02
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[5]	DINT	DL To Net 03
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[6]	DINT	DL To Net 04
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[7]	DINT	DL To Net 05
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[8]	DINT	DL To Net 06
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[9]	DINT	DL To Net 07
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[10]	DINT	DL To Net 08
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[11]	DINT	DL To Net 09
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[12]	DINT	DL To Net 10
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[13]	DINT	DL To Net 11
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[14]	DINT	DL To Net 12
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[15]	DINT	DL To Net 13
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[16]	DINT	DL To Net 14
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[17]	DINT	DL To Net 15
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:I.Data[18]	DINT	DL To Net 16

**Figure 19 - ControlLogix Controller Output Image for Drive Generic Profile Example Ladder Logic Program**

	Name	Data Type	Description
-	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O	AB:ETHERNET...	
-	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data	DINT[18]	
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[0]	DINT	Logic Command
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[1]	DINT	Speed Reference
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[2]	DINT	DL From Net 01
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[3]	DINT	DL From Net 02
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[4]	DINT	DL From Net 03
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[5]	DINT	DL From Net 04
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[6]	DINT	DL From Net 05
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[7]	DINT	DL From Net 06
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[8]	DINT	DL From Net 07
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[9]	DINT	DL From Net 08
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[10]	DINT	DL From Net 09
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[11]	DINT	DL From Net 10
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[12]	DINT	DL From Net 11
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[13]	DINT	DL From Net 12
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[14]	DINT	DL From Net 13
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[15]	DINT	DL From Net 14
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[16]	DINT	DL From Net 15
+	My_PowerFlex_753_Drive:O.Data[17]	DINT	DL From Net 16

### Program Tags

To use the Controller tags that are automatically created, you need to create the following Program tags for this example program.

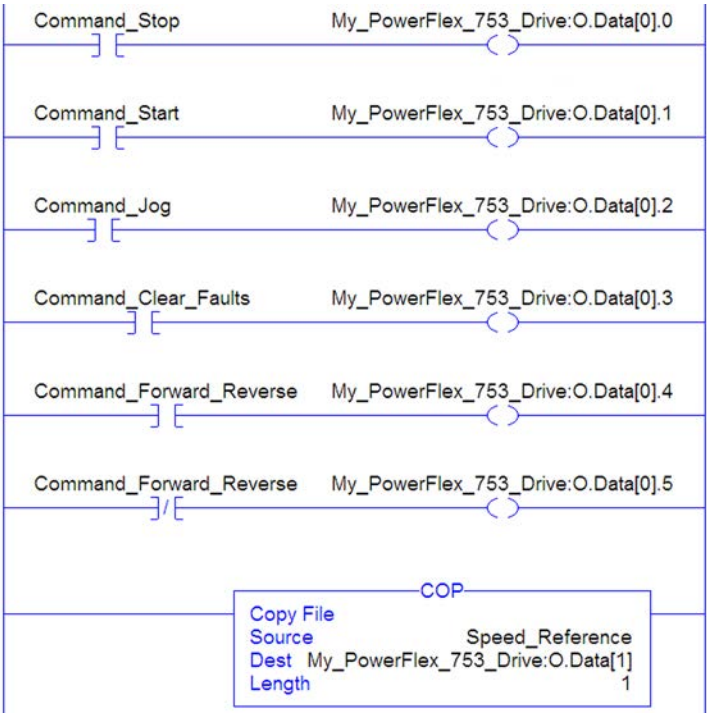
	Name	Value	Data Type	Description
	Command_Clear_Faults	0	BOOL	
	Command_Forward_Reverse	0	BOOL	
	Command_Jog	0	BOOL	
	Command_Start	0	BOOL	
	Command_Stop	0	BOOL	
	Speed_Feedback	0.0	REAL	
	Speed_Reference	0.0	REAL	
	Status_Active	0	BOOL	
	Status_At_Speed	0	BOOL	
	Status_Faulted	0	BOOL	
	Status_Forward	0	BOOL	
	Status_Ready	0	BOOL	
	Status_Reverse	0	BOOL	

**Figure 20 - ControlLogix Controller Example Ladder Logic Program Using a Drive Generic Profile for Logic Status/Feedback**





**Figure 21 - ControlLogix Controller Example Ladder Logic Program Using a Drive Generic Profile for Logic Command/Reference**



### Example Datalink Data

The Datalink data used in the example program is shown in [Figure 22](#). Note that to describe the parameters to which the Datalinks are assigned, you may want to add descriptions to the automatically-created generic controller tags or create a UDDT. For this example, the DL\_From\_Net tags were created to describe the drive parameters to which these Datalinks are assigned. For example, DL\_From\_Net\_01\_Stop\_Mode\_A indicates that option module *Host* **Parameter 01 - [DL From Net 01]** is assigned to drive parameter 370 - [Stop Mode A]. This same method applies to the DL\_To\_Net tags.

**Figure 22 - ControlLogix Controller Example Datalinks for Ladder Logic Program Using a Drive Generic Profile**

	Name	△	Value	←	Style	Data Type
[-]	DL_From_Net		{...}			DL_From_Net
[+]	DL_From_Net_01_Stop_Mode_A		1	Decimal		DINT
[+]	DL_From_Net_02_Stop_Mode_B		2	Decimal		DINT
	DL_From_Net_03_Accel_Time_1		2.5	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_04_Accel_Time_2		5.0	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_05_Decel_Time_1		7.5	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_06_Decel_Time_2		10.0	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_07_Jog_Acc_Dec_Time		12.5	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_08_Jog_Speed_1		10.0	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_09_Jog_Speed_2		15.0	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_10_Preset_Speed_1		20.0	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_11_Preset_Speed_2		25.0	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_12_Preset_Speed_3		30.0	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_13_Preset_Speed_4		35.0	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_14_Preset_Speed_5		40.0	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_15_Preset_Speed_6		45.0	Float		REAL
	DL_From_Net_16_Preset_Speed_7		50.0	Float		REAL
[-]	DL_To_Net		{...}			DL_To_Net
[+]	DL_To_Net_01_Stop_Mode_A		1	Decimal		DINT
[+]	DL_To_Net_02_Stop_Mode_B		2	Decimal		DINT
	DL_To_Net_03_Accel_Time_1		2.5	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_04_Accel_Time_2		5.0	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_05_Decel_Time_1		7.5	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_06_Decel_Time_2		10.0	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_07_Jog_Acc_Dec_Time		12.5	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_08_Jog_Speed_1		10.0	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_09_Jog_Speed_2		15.0	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_10_Preset_Speed_1		20.0	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_11_Preset_Speed_2		25.0	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_12_Preset_Speed_3		30.0	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_13_Preset_Speed_4		35.0	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_14_Preset_Speed_5		40.0	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_15_Preset_Speed_6		45.0	Float		REAL
	DL_To_Net_16_Preset_Speed_7		50.0	Float		REAL

**TIP**

To determine whether a parameter is a 32-bit integer (DINT) or a REAL data type, see the Data Type column in the chapter containing parameters in the PowerFlex 750-Series AC Drives Programming Manual (publication [750-PM001](#)). If a parameter is a REAL, a COP (Copy) instruction or UDDT is needed to copy the DINT to a REAL (inputs) or copy the REAL to a DINT (outputs).

## Using Explicit Messaging (Adapter mode only)

This chapter provides information and examples that explain how to use Explicit Messaging with a ControlLogix controller to configure and monitor the option module and connected PowerFlex 750-Series drive.

For explicit messaging with a PLC-5, SLC 500, or MicroLogix 1100/1400 controller, see Controller Examples for EtherNet/IP Network Communications with PowerFlex 750-Series Drives, publication 750COM-AT001.

Topic	Page
<a href="#">About Explicit Messaging</a>	99
<a href="#">Performing Explicit Messaging</a>	100
<a href="#">ControlLogix Controller Examples</a>	101



**ATTENTION:** Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. The examples in this publication are intended solely for purposes of example. There are many variables and requirements with any application. Rockwell Automation, Inc. does not assume responsibility or liability (to include intellectual property liability) for actual use of the examples shown in this publication.



**ATTENTION:** Risk of equipment damage exists. If Explicit Messages are programmed to write parameter data to Nonvolatile Storage (NVS) frequently, the NVS will quickly exceed its life cycle and cause the drive to malfunction. Do not create a program that frequently uses Explicit Messages to write parameter data to NVS. Datalinks do not write to NVS and should be used for frequently changed parameters.

See [Chapter 5](#) for information about the I/O Image, using Logic Command/Status, Reference/Feedback, and Datalinks.

### About Explicit Messaging

Explicit Messaging is used to transfer data that does not require continuous updates. With Explicit Messaging, you can configure and monitor a slave device's parameters on the network.

#### IMPORTANT

When an explicit message is performed, by default no connection is made since it is an "unconnected" message. When timing of the message transaction is important, you can create a dedicated message connection between the controller and drive by checking the "Connected" box on the Communications tab message configuration dialog box during message setup. These message connections are in addition to the I/O connection. However, the trade off for more message connections is decreased network performance. If your application cannot tolerate this, do not check the "Connected" box, which is recommended.

**TIP** To message to another device in a different drive port, see the Instance table in Appendix C:

- DPI Parameter Object section on [page 163](#) for *Device* parameters.
- Host DPI Parameter Object section on [page 177](#) for *Host* parameters.

In the Message Configuration dialog box, set the Instance field to an appropriate value within the range listed for the port in which the device resides.

**IMPORTANT** PowerFlex 750-Series drives have explicit messaging limitations. [Table 5](#) shows the EtherNet/IP Object Class code compatibilities for these drives.

Table 5 - Explicit Messaging Class Code Compatibility with PowerFlex 750-Series Drive

EtherNet/IP Object Class Code	Compatibility	Explicit Messaging Function
Parameter Object 0x0F	No	Single parameter reads/writes
DPI Parameter Object 0x93	Yes <sup>(1)</sup> with limitations	Single and scattered parameter reads/writes
Host DPI Parameter Object 0x9F	Yes <sup>(2)</sup> with limitations	Single and scattered parameter reads/writes

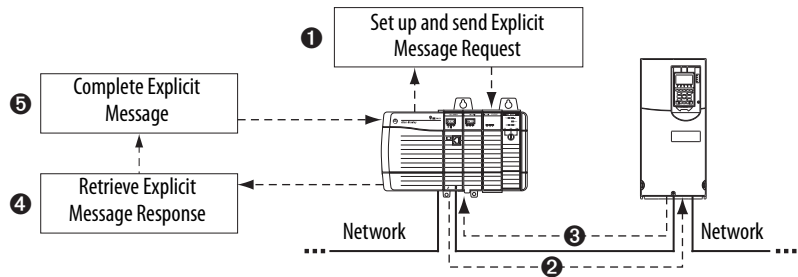
- (1) Enables access to drive parameters (Port 0), DPI device parameters (Ports 1...6 only), and Host parameters (Ports 7...14 only). For example, DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x93 can access a Safe Speed Monitor option module in Port 6. However, Class code 0x93 cannot access, for example, the Host parameters in a 24V I/O option module in Port 5. See [DPI Parameter Object on page 163](#) for instance (parameter) numbering.
- (2) Enables access to drive parameters (Port 0) and Host parameters for all ports (1...14). Host DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x9F cannot access DPI (device) parameters. For example, if a 20-750-DNET option module is in Port 4, its Host parameters can be accessed, but not its DPI (device) parameters. See [Host DPI Parameter Object on page 177](#) for instance (parameter) numbering.

## Performing Explicit Messaging

There are five basic events in the Explicit Messaging process. The details of each step will vary depending on the type of controller being used. See the documentation for your controller.

**IMPORTANT** There must be a request message and a response message for all Explicit Messages, whether you are reading or writing data.

Figure 23 - Explicit Message Process




Event	Description
<b>1</b>	You format the required data and set up the ladder logic program to send an Explicit Message request to the scanner or bridge module (download).
<b>2</b>	The scanner or bridge module transmits the Explicit Message Request to the slave device over the network.
<b>3</b>	The slave device transmits the Explicit Message Response back to the scanner. The data is stored in the scanner buffer.

Event	Description
④	The controller retrieves the Explicit Message Response from the scanner's buffer (upload).
⑤	The Explicit Message is complete.

For information on the maximum number of Explicit Messages that can be executed at a time, see the documentation for the bridge or scanner and/or controller that is being used.

ControlLogix Controller Examples

**TIP** To display the Message Configuration dialog box in RSLogix 5000 software, add a message instruction (MSG), create a new tag for the message (Properties: Base tag type, MESSAGE data type, controller scope), and click the  button in the message instruction.

For supported classes, instances, and attributes, see [Appendix C](#), EtherNet/IP Objects (Adapter mode only).

**IMPORTANT** The explicit messaging examples in this section can be performed using any version of RSLogix 5000 software.

**IMPORTANT** The read and write messaging examples in this section are for *Device* parameters which use Class Code 0x93. For *Host* parameters, use Class Code 0x9F and format the rest of the message in the same way as these examples. The Message Configuration has a Service Type of “Parameter Read” which is Class code 0x0F, Parameter Object. Parameter Object is not supported in PowerFlex 750-series drives.

ControlLogix Controller Example Ladder Logic Program to Read a Single Parameter

A Get Attribute Single message is used to read a single parameter. This read message example reads the value of the 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameter 007 - [Output Current] in a PowerFlex 750-Series drive.

Table 6 - Example Controller Tags to Read a Single Parameter

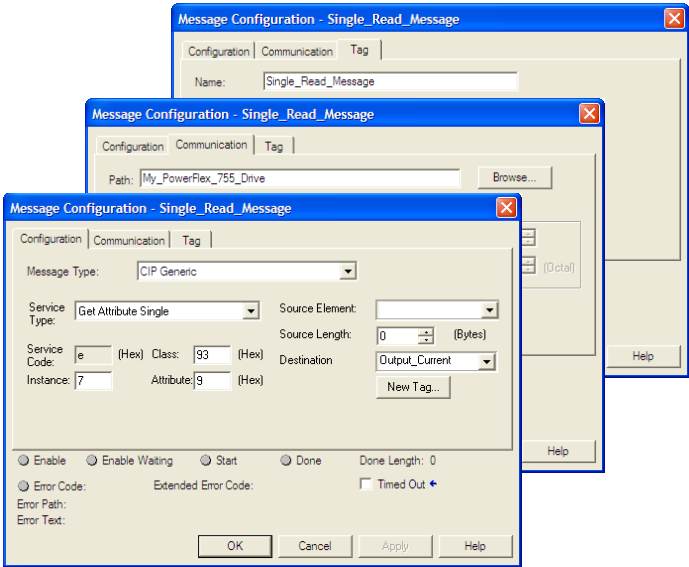
Operand	Controller Tags for Single Read Message	Data Type
XIC	Execute_Single_Read_Message	BOOL
MSG	Single_Read_Message	MESSAGE

Figure 24 - Example Ladder Logic to Read a Single Parameter



## ControlLogix – Formatting a Message to Read a Single Parameter

Figure 25 - Get Attribute Single Message Configuration Dialog Boxes



The following table identifies the data that is required in each box to configure a message to read a single parameter.

Configuration Tab	Example Value	Description
Message Type	CIP Generic	Used to access the DPI Parameter Object in the option module.
Service Type <sup>(1)</sup>	Get Attribute Single	This service is used to read a parameter value.
Service Code <sup>(1)</sup>	e (Hex.)	Code for the requested service.
Class	93 or 9F (Hex.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Class ID for the DPI Parameter Object.
Instance <sup>(2)</sup>	7 (Dec.)	Instance number is the same as parameter number.
Attribute	9 (Hex.)	Attribute number for the Parameter Value attribute.
Source Element	—	Leave blank (not applicable).
Source Length	0 bytes	Number of bytes of service data to be sent in the message.
Destination	Output_Current <sup>(5)</sup>	The tag where the data that is read is stored.
Communication Tab	Example Value	Description
Path <sup>(3)</sup>	My_PowerFlex_755_Drive	The path is the route that the message will follow.
Tag Tab	Example Value	Description
Name	Single_Read_Message	The name for the message.

- (1) The default setting for Service Type is “Custom,” enabling entry of a Service Code not available from the Service Type pull-down menu. When choosing a Service Type other than “Custom” from the pull-down menu, an appropriate Hex. value is automatically assigned to the Service Code box which is dimmed (unavailable).
- (2) The instance is the parameter number in the drive (Port 0). For example, to read parameter 4 of a peripheral in Port 5 of a PowerFlex 755 drive, the instance would be  $21504 + 4 = 21508$ . See [DPI Parameter Object on page 163](#) (Class code 0x93) or [Host DPI Parameter Object on page 177](#) (Class code 0x9F) to determine the instance number.
- (3) Click **Browse** to find the path, or type in the name of the device listed in the I/O Configuration folder (for this example, My\_PowerFlex\_755\_Drive).
- (4) See [Table 5 on page 100](#) for limitations of PowerFlex 750-Series drives when using DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x93 or Host DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x9F for explicit messaging.
- (5) In this example, Output Current is a 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameter requiring the Data Type field to be set to “REAL” when creating the controller tag. To read a 32-bit integer parameter, set the tag Data Type field to “DINT.” For a 16-bit parameter, set the Data Type field to “INT.” See the drive documentation to determine the size of the parameter and its data type.

## ControlLogix Controller Example Ladder Logic Program to Write a Single Parameter

A Set Attribute Single message is used to write to a single parameter. This write message example writes a value to the 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameter 535 - [Accel Time 1] in a PowerFlex 750-Series drive.

**Table 7 - Example Controller Tags to Write a Single Parameter**

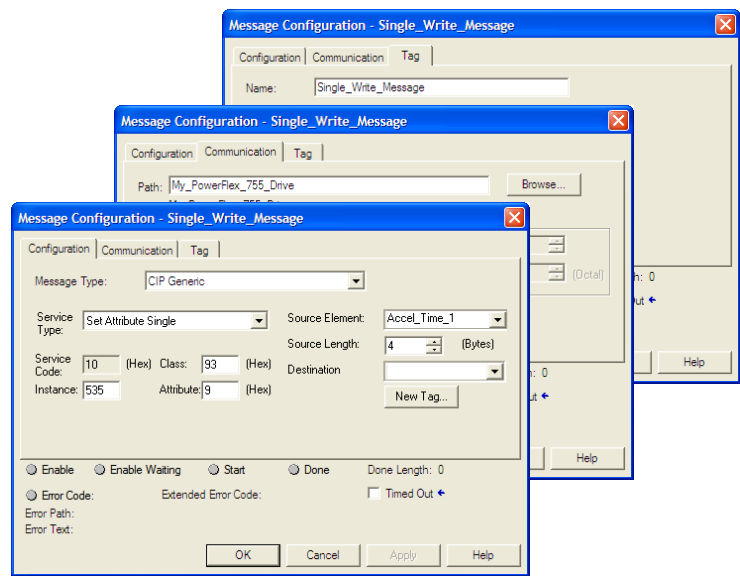
Operand	Controller Tags for Single Write Message	Data Type
XIC	Execute_Single_Write_Message	BOOL
MSG	Single_Write_Message	MESSAGE

**Figure 26 - Example Ladder Logic to Write a Single Parameter**



## ControlLogix – Formatting a Message to Write a Single Parameter

Figure 27 - Set Attribute Single Message Configuration Dialog Boxes



The following table identifies the data that is required in each box to configure a message to write a single parameter.

Configuration Tab	Example Value	Description
Message Type	CIP Generic	Used to access the DPI Parameter Object in the option module.
Service Type <sup>(1)</sup>	Set Attribute Single	This service is used to write a parameter value.
Service Code <sup>(1)</sup>	10 (Hex.)	Code for the requested service.
Class	93 or 9F (Hex.) <sup>(5)</sup>	Class ID for the DPI Parameter Object.
Instance <sup>(2)</sup>	535 (Dec.)	Instance number is the same as parameter number.
Attribute <sup>(3)</sup>	9 or A (Hex.)	Attribute number for the Parameter Value attribute.
Source Element	Accel_Time_1 <sup>(6)</sup>	Name of the tag for any service data to be sent from the scanner or bridge to the option module/drive.
Source Length	4 bytes <sup>(6)</sup>	Number of bytes of service data to be sent in the message.
Destination	—	Leave blank (not applicable).
Communication Tab	Example Value	Description
Path <sup>(4)</sup>	My_PowerFlex_755_Drive	The path is the route that the message will follow.
Tag Tab	Example Value	Description
Name	Single_Write_Message	The name for the message.

- (1) The default setting for Service Type is “Custom,” enabling entry of a Service Code not available from the Service Type pull-down menu. When choosing a Service Type other than “Custom” from the pull-down menu, an appropriate Hex. value is automatically assigned to the Service Code box which is dimmed (unavailable).
- (2) The instance is the parameter number in the drive (Port 0). For example, to read parameter 4 of a peripheral in Port 5 of a PowerFlex 755 drive, the instance would be 21504 + 4 = 21508. See [DPI Parameter Object on page 163](#) (Class code 0x93) or [Host DPI Parameter Object on page 177](#) (Class code 0x9F) to determine the instance number.
- (3) Setting the Attribute value to “9” will write the parameter value to the drive’s Nonvolatile Storage (EEPROM) memory, so the parameter value will remain even after the drive is power cycled. **Important:** When set to “9,” be very cautious as the EEPROM may quickly exceed its life cycle and cause the drive to malfunction. Setting the Attribute value to “A” will write the parameter value to temporary memory, so the parameter value will be lost after the drive is power cycled. It is recommended to use the “A” setting when frequent write messages are required.
- (4) Click **Browse** to find the path, or type in the name of the device listed in the I/O Configuration folder (for this example, My\_PowerFlex\_755\_Drive).
- (5) See [Table 5 on page 100](#) for limitations of PowerFlex 750-Series drives when using DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x93 or Host DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x9F for explicit messaging.
- (6) In this example, Accel Time 1 is a 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameter requiring the Data Type field to be set to “REAL” when creating the controller tag. To write to a 32-bit integer parameter, set the tag Data Type field to “DINT.” For a 16-bit parameter, set the Data Type field to “INT.” Also, the Source Length field on the Message Configuration dialog box must correspond to the selected Data Type in bytes (for example, 4 bytes for a REAL or DINT, or 2 bytes for an INT). See the drive documentation to determine the size of the parameter and its data type.



## ControlLogix Controller Example Ladder Logic Program to Read Multiple Parameters

A Scattered Read message is used to read the values of multiple parameters. This read message example reads the values of these five 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameters in a PowerFlex 750-Series drive:

- Parameter 001 - [Output Frequency]
- Parameter 007 - [Output Current]
- Parameter 008 - [Output Voltage]
- Parameter 009 - [Output Power]
- Parameter 011 - [DC Bus Volts]

See [DPI Parameter Object on page 163](#) (Class code 0x93) or [Host DPI Parameter Object on page 177](#) (Class code 0x9F) for parameter numbering.

**Table 8 - Example Controller Tags to Read Multiple Parameters**

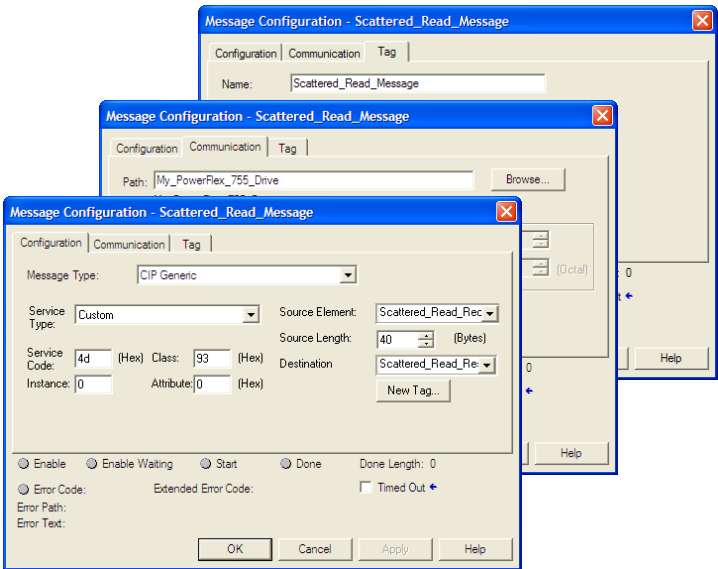
Operand	Controller Tags for Scattered Read Message	Data Type
XIC	Execute_Scattered_Read_Message	BOOL
MSG	Scattered_Read_Message	MESSAGE

**Figure 28 - Example Ladder Logic to Read Multiple Parameters**



## ControlLogix – Formatting a Message to Read Multiple Parameters

Figure 29 - Scattered Read Message Configuration Dialog Boxes



The following table identifies the data that is required in each box to configure a message to read multiple parameters.

Configuration Tab	Example Value	Description
Message Type	CIP Generic	Used to access the DPI Parameter Object in the adapter.
Service Type <sup>(1)</sup>	Custom	Required for scattered messages.
Service Code <sup>(1)</sup>	4d (Hex.)	Code for the requested service.
Class	93 or 9F (Hex.) <sup>(3)</sup>	Class ID for the DPI Parameter Object.
Instance	0 (Dec.)	Required for scattered messages.
Attribute	0 (Hex.)	Required for scattered messages.
Source Element	Scattered_Read_Request <sup>(4)</sup>	Name of the tag for any service data to be sent from scanner or bridge to the option module/drive.
Source Length	40 bytes <sup>(4)</sup>	Number of bytes of service data to be sent in the message.
Destination	Scattered_Read_Response <sup>(5)</sup>	The tag where the data that is read is stored.
Communication Tab	Example Value	Description
Path <sup>(2)</sup>	My_PowerFlex_755_Drive	The path is the route that the message will follow.
Tag Tab	Example Value	Description
Name	Scattered_Read_Message	The name for the message.

- (1) The default setting for Service Type is “Custom,” enabling entry of a Service Code not available from the Service Type pull-down menu. When choosing a Service Type other than “Custom” from the pull-down menu, an appropriate Hex. value is automatically assigned to the Service Code box which is dimmed (unavailable). When reading 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameters, as in this example, data conversion using COP (Copy) instructions or UDDTs is required to correctly show the parameter values.
- (2) Click **Browse** to find the path, or type in the name of the device listed in the I/O Configuration folder (for this example, My\_PowerFlex\_755\_Drive).
- (3) See [Table 5 on page 100](#) for limitations of PowerFlex 750-Series drives when using DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x93 or Host DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x9F for explicit messaging.
- (4) In this example, we are reading five 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameters. Each parameter being read requires two contiguous DINT registers. Therefore, a controller tag was created with its Data Type field set to “DINT[10].” Also, the Source Length field on the Message Configuration dialog box must correspond to the selected Data Type in bytes (for this example, 40 bytes for a DINT[10] array). Scattered read messages always assume that every parameter being read is a 32-bit parameter, regardless of its actual size. Maximum message length is 256 bytes which can read up to 32 parameters, regardless of their size. For parameter numbering, see [DPI Parameter Object on page 163](#) (Class code 0x93) or [Host DPI Parameter Object on page 177](#) (Class code 0x9F).
- (5) The controller tag for “Scattered\_Read\_Response” must be the same size as the controller tag for “Scattered\_Read\_Request” (for this example, 40 bytes), but can be a different data type (for this example, a UDDT to handle conversions to parameter values that are a REAL data type).

### ControlLogix Controller Example Scattered Read Request Data

In this message example, we use the data structure in [Figure 30](#) in the source tag named Scattered Read Request to read these five 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameters in a PowerFlex 750-Series drive:

- Parameter 001 - [Output Frequency]
- Parameter 007 - [Output Current]
- Parameter 008 - [Output Voltage]
- Parameter 009 - [Output Power]
- Parameter 011 - [DC Bus Volts]

See [DPI Parameter Object on page 163](#) (Class code 0x93) or [Host DPI Parameter Object on page 177](#) (Class code 0x9F) for parameter numbering.

**Figure 30 - Example Scattered Read Request Data**

Name	Value	Data Type	Description
Scattered_Read_Request	{ ... }	DINT[10]	
Scattered_Read_Request[0]	1	DINT	Parameter Number (decimal)
Scattered_Read_Request[1]	0	DINT	Pad Word
Scattered_Read_Request[2]	7	DINT	Parameter Number (decimal)
Scattered_Read_Request[3]	0	DINT	Pad Word
Scattered_Read_Request[4]	8	DINT	Parameter Number (decimal)
Scattered_Read_Request[5]	0	DINT	Pad Word
Scattered_Read_Request[6]	9	DINT	Parameter Number (decimal)
Scattered_Read_Request[7]	0	DINT	Pad Word
Scattered_Read_Request[8]	11	DINT	Parameter Number (decimal)
Scattered_Read_Request[9]	0	DINT	Pad Word

### ControlLogix Controller Example Scattered Read Response Data

The Scattered Read Request message reads the multiple parameters and returns their values to the destination tag (Scattered\_Read\_Response). [Figure 31](#) shows the parameter values which, in this example, have been converted using a UDDT for correct presentation. COP (Copy) instructions could have been used for this purpose instead of a UDDT. If the parameters being read are 32-bit integers, do not COP the data to a REAL tag.

**Figure 31 - Example Scattered Read Response Converted Data**

Name	Value	Data Type	Description
Scattered_Read_Response	{ ... }	Scattered_Read_Response	
Scattered_Read_Response.Output_Frequency_Par_No	1	DINT	
Scattered_Read_Response.Output_Frequency_Par_Value	60.205975	REAL	
Scattered_Read_Response.Output_Current_Par_No	7	DINT	
Scattered_Read_Response.Output_Current_Par_Value	12.570678	REAL	
Scattered_Read_Response.Output_Voltage_Par_No	8	DINT	
Scattered_Read_Response.Output_Voltage_Par_Value	418.34348	REAL	
Scattered_Read_Response.Output_Power_Par_No	9	DINT	
Scattered_Read_Response.Output_Power_Par_Value	12.3534	REAL	
Scattered_Read_Response.DC_Bus_Volts_Par_No	11	DINT	
Scattered_Read_Response.DC_Bus_Volts_Par_Value	566.5277	REAL	

In this message example, the parameters have the following values:

PowerFlex 750-Series Drive Parameter	Read Value
1 - [Output Frequency]	60.205975 Hz
7 - [Output Current]	12.570678 Amp
8 - [Output Voltage]	418.34348V AC
9 - [Output Power]	12.3534 kW
11 - [DC Bus Volts]	566.5277V DC

## ControlLogix Controller Example Ladder Logic Program to Write Multiple Parameters

A Scattered Write message is used to write to multiple parameters. This write message example writes the following values to these five 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameters in a PowerFlex 750-Series drive:

PowerFlex 750-Series Drive Parameter	Write Value
536 - [Accel Time 2]	11.1 Sec
538 - [Decel Time 2]	22.2 Sec
575 - [Preset Speed 5]	33.3 Hz
576 - [Preset Speed 6]	44.4 Hz
577 - [Preset Speed 7]	55.5 Hz

See [DPI Parameter Object on page 163](#) (Class code 0x93) or [Host DPI Parameter Object on page 177](#) (Class code 0x9F) for parameter numbering.

Table 9 - Example Controller Tags to Write Multiple Parameters

Operand	Controller Tags for Scattered Write Message	Data Type
XIC	Execute_Scattered_Write_Message	BOOL
MSG	Scattered_Write_Message	MESSAGE

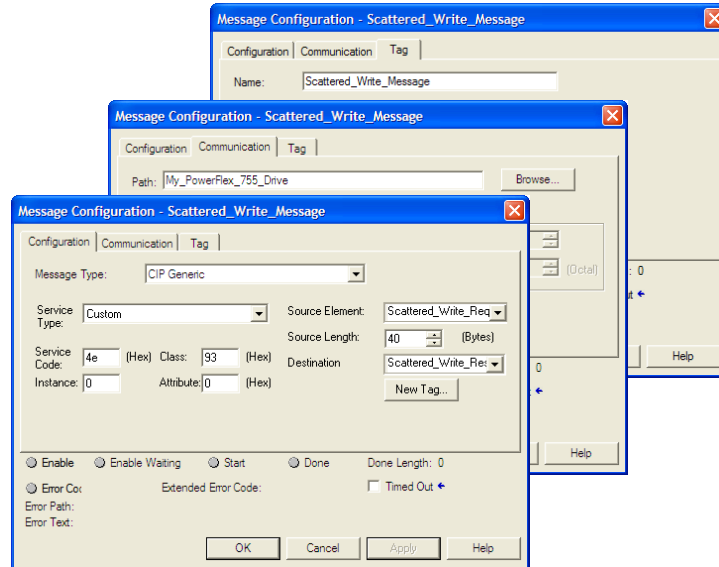
Figure 32 - Example Ladder Logic to Write Multiple Parameters



**IMPORTANT** If the explicit message scattered write must be written continuously, then use a separate explicit message single write for each parameter using DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x93 and attribute A (see [page 104](#)). Attribute A writes to RAM—not NVS (EEPROM) memory. This example scattered write message using attribute 0 writes to NVS. Over time, continuous writes will exceed the EEPROM life cycle and cause the drive to malfunction.

## ControlLogix – Formatting a Message to Write Multiple Parameters

Figure 33 - Scattered Write Multiple Message Configuration Dialog Boxes



The following table identifies the data that is required in each box to configure a message to write multiple parameters.

Configuration Tab	Example Value	Description
Message Type	CIP Generic	Used to access the DPI Parameter Object in the option module.
Service Type <sup>(1)</sup>	Custom	Required for scattered messages.
Service Code <sup>(1)</sup>	4e (Hex.)	Code for the requested service.
Class	93 or 9F (Hex.) <sup>(4)</sup>	Class ID for the DPI Parameter Object.
Instance	0 (Dec.)	Required for scattered messages.
Attribute <sup>(2)</sup>	0 (Hex.)	Required for scattered messages.
Source Element	Scattered_Write_Request <sup>(5)</sup>	Name of the tag for any service data to be sent from scanner or bridge to the option module/ drive.
Source Length	40 bytes <sup>(5)</sup>	Number of bytes of service data to be sent in the message.
Destination	Scattered_Write_Response <sup>(6)</sup>	The tag where the data that is read is stored.
Communication Tab	Example Value	Description
Path <sup>(3)</sup>	My_PowerFlex_755_Drive	The path is the route that the message will follow.
Tag Tab	Example Value	Description
Name	Scattered_Write_Message	The name for the message.

- (1) The default setting for Service Type is "Custom," enabling entry of a Service Code not available from the Service Type pull-down menu. When choosing a Service Type other than "Custom" from the pull-down menu, an appropriate Hex. value is automatically assigned to the Service Code box which is dimmed (unavailable). When writing to 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameters, as in this example, data conversion using COP (Copy) instructions or UDDTs is required to correctly write the parameter values.
- (2) Scattered writes always write parameter values to the drive's Nonvolatile Storage (EEPROM) memory, so these values will remain even after the drive is power cycled. **Important:** Be very cautious as the EEPROM may quickly exceed its life cycle and cause the drive to malfunction.
- (3) Click **Browse** to find the path, or type in the name of the device listed in the I/O Configuration folder (for this example, My\_PowerFlex\_755\_Drive).
- (4) See [Table 5 on page 100](#) for limitations of PowerFlex 750-Series drives when using DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x93 or Host DPI Parameter Object Class code 0x9F for explicit messaging.
- (5) In this example, we are writing to five 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameters. Each parameter being written to requires two contiguous DINT registers. Therefore, a controller tag was created with its Data Type field set to the name of the UDDT of five interleaved DINTs and REALs. Also, the Source Length field on the Message Configuration dialog box must correspond to the selected Data Type in bytes (for this example, 40 bytes for an array of five scattered REAL structures). Scattered write messages always assume that every parameter being written to is a 32-bit parameter, regardless of its actual size. Maximum message length is 256 bytes which can write up to 32 parameters, regardless of their size. For parameter numbering, see [DPI Parameter Object on page 163](#) (Class code 0x93) or [Host DPI Parameter Object on page 177](#) (Class code 0x9F).
- (6) The controller tag for "Scattered\_Write\_Response" must be the same size as the controller tag for "Scattered\_Write\_Request" (for this example, 40 bytes). An array of DINTs is suggested to be able to read any error codes that are returned.

### ControlLogix Controller Example Scattered Write Request Data

In this message example, we use the data structure in [Figure 34](#) in the source tag (Scattered\_Write\_Request) to write new values to these 32-bit REAL (floating point) parameters:

PowerFlex 750-Series Drive Parameter	Write Value
536 - [Accel Time 2]	11.1 Sec
538 - [Decel Time 2]	22.2 Sec
575 - [Preset Speed 5]	33.3 Hz
576 - [Preset Speed 6]	44.4 Hz
577 - [Preset Speed 7]	55.5 Hz

See [DPI Parameter Object on page 163](#) (Class code 0x93) or [Host DPI Parameter Object on page 177](#) (Class code 0x9F) for parameter numbering.

[Figure 34](#) shows the parameter values which, in this example, have been converted using a UDDT to correctly write their values. COP (Copy) instructions could have been used for this purpose instead of a UDDT. If the parameters being written to are 32-bit integers, do not COP the data to a REAL tag.

**Figure 34 - Example Scattered Write Request Converted Data**

Name	Value	Data Type	Description
Scattered_Write_Request	{ ... }	Scattered_Write...	
Scattered_Write_Request.Accel_Time_2_Par_No	536	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Request.Accel_Time_2_Par_Value	11.1	REAL	
Scattered_Write_Request.Decel_Time_2_Par_No	538	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Request.Decel_Time_2_Par_Value	22.2	REAL	
Scattered_Write_Request.Preset_Speed_5_Par_No	575	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Request.Preset_Speed_5_Par_Value	33.3	REAL	
Scattered_Write_Request.Preset_Speed_6_Par_No	576	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Request.Preset_Speed_6_Par_Value	44.4	REAL	
Scattered_Write_Request.Preset_Speed_7_Par_No	577	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Request.Preset_Speed_7_Par_Value	55.5	REAL	

### ControlLogix Controller Example Scattered Write Response Data

The results of the message appear in the destination tag named Scattered\_Write\_Response ([Figure 35](#)). Values of “0” indicate no errors occurred.

**Figure 35 - Example Scattered Write Response Data**

Name	Value	Data Type	Description
Scattered_Write_Response	{ ... }	DINT[10]	
Scattered_Write_Response[0]	536	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Response[1]	0	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Response[2]	538	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Response[3]	0	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Response[4]	575	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Response[5]	0	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Response[6]	576	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Response[7]	0	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Response[8]	577	DINT	
Scattered_Write_Response[9]	0	DINT	

## ControlLogix Controller – Explanation of Request and Response Data for Read/Write Multiple Messaging

The data structures in [Figure 36](#) and [Figure 37](#) use 32-bit words and can accommodate up to 32 parameters in a single message. In the Response Message, a parameter number with Bit 15 set indicates that the associated parameter value field contains an error code (parameter number in response data will be negative).

The PowerFlex 750-Series AC Drives Programming Manual, publication [750-PM001](#), lists the data type for each parameter. When performing a Scattered Read of REAL data type parameters, the DINT parameter value in the Response (Destination Data) array will need to be COP to a REAL tag.

**Figure 36 - Data Structures for Scattered Read Messages**

Request (Source Data)		Response (Destination Data)	
DINT 0	Parameter Number	DINT 0	Parameter Number
1	Pad	1	Parameter Value
2	Parameter Number	2	Parameter Number
3	Pad	3	Parameter Value
4	Parameter Number	4	Parameter Number
5	Pad	5	Parameter Value
6	Parameter Number	6	Parameter Number
7	Pad	7	Parameter Value
8	Parameter Number	8	Parameter Number
9	Pad	9	Parameter Value
10	Parameter Number	10	Parameter Number
11	Pad	11	Parameter Value
12	Parameter Number	12	Parameter Number
13	Pad	13	Parameter Value
14	Parameter Number	14	Parameter Number
15	Pad	15	Parameter Value
16	Parameter Number	16	Parameter Number
17	Pad	17	Parameter Value
18	Parameter Number	18	Parameter Number
19	Pad	19	Parameter Value
20	Parameter Number	20	Parameter Number
21	Pad	21	Parameter Value
22	Parameter Number	22	Parameter Number
23	Pad	23	Parameter Value
24	Parameter Number	24	Parameter Number
25	Pad	25	Parameter Value
26	Parameter Number	26	Parameter Number
27	Pad	27	Parameter Value
28	Parameter Number	28	Parameter Number
29	Pad	29	Parameter Value
30	Parameter Number	30	Parameter Number
31	Pad	31	Parameter Value
32	Parameter Number	32	Parameter Number
33	Pad	33	Parameter Value
34	Parameter Number	34	Parameter Number
35	Pad	35	Parameter Value
⋮		⋮	
62	Parameter Number	62	Parameter Number
63	Pad	63	Parameter Value

When performing a Scattered Write to REAL data type parameters, the REAL parameter value will need to be COP to the DINT parameter value tag in the Request (Source Data) array.

**Figure 37 - Data Structures for Scattered Write Messages**

Request (Source Data)		Response (Destination Data)	
DINT 0	Parameter Number	DINT 0	Parameter Number
1	Parameter Value	1	Pad
2	Parameter Number	2	Parameter Number
3	Parameter Value	3	Pad
4	Parameter Number	4	Parameter Number
5	Parameter Value	5	Pad
6	Parameter Number	6	Parameter Number
7	Parameter Value	7	Pad
8	Parameter Number	8	Parameter Number
9	Parameter Value	9	Pad
10	Parameter Number	10	Parameter Number
11	Parameter Value	11	Pad
12	Parameter Number	12	Parameter Number
13	Parameter Value	13	Pad
14	Parameter Number	14	Parameter Number
15	Parameter Value	15	Pad
16	Parameter Number	16	Parameter Number
17	Parameter Value	17	Pad
18	Parameter Number	18	Parameter Number
19	Parameter Value	19	Pad
20	Parameter Number	20	Parameter Number
21	Parameter Value	21	Pad
22	Parameter Number	22	Parameter Number
23	Parameter Value	23	Pad
24	Parameter Number	24	Parameter Number
25	Parameter Value	25	Pad
26	Parameter Number	26	Parameter Number
27	Parameter Value	27	Pad
28	Parameter Number	28	Parameter Number
29	Parameter Value	29	Pad
30	Parameter Number	30	Parameter Number
31	Parameter Value	31	Pad
32	Parameter Number	32	Parameter Number
33	Parameter Value	33	Pad
34	Parameter Number	34	Parameter Number
35	Parameter Value	35	Pad
:		:	
62	Parameter Number	62	Parameter Number
63	Parameter Value	63	Pad



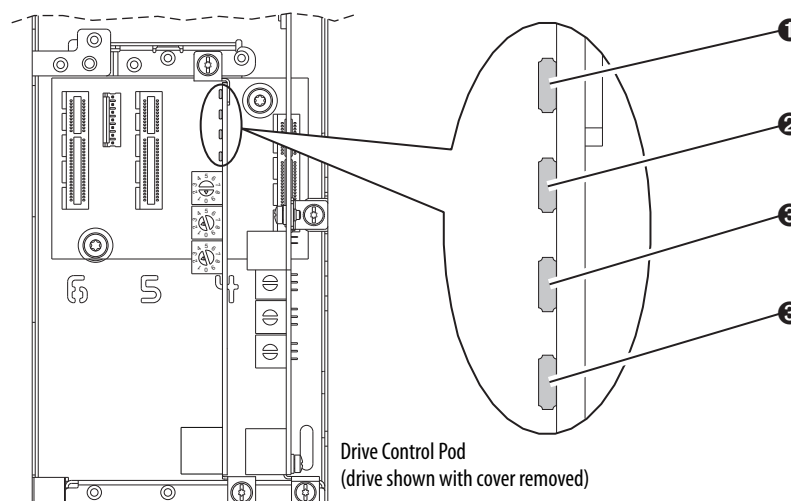
## Troubleshooting

This chapter provides information for diagnosing and troubleshooting potential problems with the option module and network.

Topic	Page
<a href="#">Understanding the Status Indicators</a>	113
<a href="#">Indications for Adapter Mode Operation</a>	114
<a href="#">Indications for Tap Mode Operation</a>	116
<a href="#">Viewing Option Module Diagnostic Items</a>	118
<a href="#">Viewing and Clearing Events</a>	122

### Understanding the Status Indicators

The option module has four status indicators. They can be viewed with the drive cover removed. The indicators operate differently in Adapter mode than Tap mode. See the respective section for details.



Item	Adapter Mode Operation			Tap Mode Operation		
	Indicator Name	Description	See	Indicator Name	Description	See
❶	PORT	DPI Connection Status	<a href="#">page 114</a>	OK	Option Module Status	<a href="#">page 116</a>
❷	MOD	Option Module Status	<a href="#">page 114</a>	LINK 1	ENET1 Network Port Status	<a href="#">page 116</a>
❸	NET A	Network Connection Status	<a href="#">page 115</a>	LINK 2	ENET2 Network Port Status	<a href="#">page 117</a>
❹	NET B	Option Module Transmission Status	<a href="#">page 115</a>	LINK 3	ENET3 Network Port Status	<a href="#">page 117</a>

## Indications for Adapter Mode Operation

Use the following sections to troubleshoot the Adapter mode of operation.

### PORT Status Indicator—Adapter Mode

This red/green bicolor LED indicates the status of the option module's connection to the drive as shown in the table below.

Status	Cause	Corrective Action
Off	The option module is not powered or is not properly connected to the drive.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Securely connect and ground the option module to the drive by fully inserting it into the drive port and tightening its two captive screws to the recommended torque.</li> <li>Apply power to the drive.</li> </ul>
Flashing Red	The option module is not communicating with the drive via DPL.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Verify that the option module is properly inserted in the drive port.</li> <li>Cycle power the drive.</li> </ul>
Steady Red	The drive has refused an I/O connection from the option module.	<p><b>Important:</b> Cycle power to the drive after making any of the following corrections:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Securely connect and ground the option module to the drive by fully inserting it into the drive port and tightening its two captive screws to the recommended torque.</li> <li>Verify that the drive supports the Comm Driver.</li> </ul>
Flashing Orange	The option module is not compatible with the drive.	Install the option module into a compatible product of the same brand (an Allen-Bradley PowerFlex 750-Series drive)
Flashing Green	The option module is establishing an I/O connection to the drive.	No action required. Normal behavior if no I/O is enabled.
Steady Green	The option module is properly connected and is communicating with the drive.	No action required.

### MOD Status Indicator—Adapter Mode

This red/green bicolor LED indicates the status of the option module as shown in the table below.

Status	Cause	Corrective Action
Off	The option module is not powered or is not properly connected to the drive.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Securely connect and ground the option module to the drive by fully inserting it into the drive port and tightening its two captive screws to the recommended torque.</li> <li>Apply power to the drive.</li> </ul>
Flashing Red	The drive is in firmware upgrade mode. The option module has an EEPROM fault. The network address switches have been changed since powerup. A duplicate IP address fault has been detected. The DHCP lease has expired. The network address switches are set to "888." The network configuration (IP address, subnet mask, gateway address) is invalid. The User FPGA configuration is invalid.	View the option module event queue to determine which of these conditions is present. Then, depending on the cause, take the appropriate corrective action. <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Clear faults in the option module.</li> <li>Cycle power to the drive.</li> <li>If cycling power does not correct the problem, the option module parameter settings may have been corrupted. Reset defaults and reconfigure the option module.</li> <li>If resetting defaults does not correct the problem, update the option module with the latest firmware revision.</li> <li>Change the network address switches to a value other than "888."</li> </ul>
Flashing Green	The option module is operating normally, but is not transferring I/O data to a controller.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Place the scanner in RUN mode.</li> <li>Program the controller to recognize and transmit I/O to the option module.</li> <li>Configure the option module for the program in the controller.</li> <li>Normal behavior if no I/O is being transferred.</li> </ul>
Steady Green	The option module is operating normally and is transferring I/O data to a controller.	No action required.

## NET A Status Indicator—Adapter Mode

This red/green bicolor LED indicates the status for the network connection as shown in the table below.

Status	Cause	Corrective Actions
Off	The option module is not powered. The option module is not properly connected to the network. The option module has not acquired its network configuration (IP address, subnet mask, gateway address) from the BOOTP/DHCP server.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Securely connect and ground the option module to the drive by fully inserting it into the drive port and tightening its two captive screws to the recommended torque.</li> <li>Correctly connect the Ethernet cable to the Ethernet connector.</li> <li>Set a unique IP address with the option module rotary switches, option module parameters, or a BOOTP or DHCP server.</li> <li>Apply power to the drive.</li> </ul>
Flashing Red	The I/O connection has timed out.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Place the controller in RUN mode, or apply power to the peer device that will send I/O.</li> <li>Check the IGMP Snooping/Ethernet Switches for correct operation.</li> <li>Check the amount of traffic on the network.</li> </ul>
Steady Red	A duplicate IP address fault has been detected. The DHCP lease has expired.	Configure the option module to use a unique IP address and cycle power.
Flashing Green	The option module is operating normally, but does not have any CIP connections (I/O or explicit).	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Place the controller in RUN mode, or apply power to the peer device that will send I/O.</li> <li>Program the controller or peer device to recognize and transmit I/O, or make a message connection to the option module.</li> <li>Configure the option module for the program in the controller or the I/O from the peer device.</li> </ul>
Steady Green	The option module is operating normally and has at least one CIP connection (I/O or explicit).	No action required.

## NET B Status Indicator—Adapter Mode

This green LED indicates the status of the option module transmitting on the network as shown in the table below.

Status	Cause	Corrective Actions
Off	The option module is not transmitting on the network.	<p>If NET A indicator is off:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Securely connect and ground the option module to the drive by fully inserting it into the drive port and tightening its two captive screws to the recommended torque, and connect the option module to the network using an Ethernet cable.</li> <li>Correctly connect the Ethernet cable to the Ethernet connector.</li> <li>Set a unique IP address with the option module rotary switches, option module parameters, or a BOOTP or DHCP server.</li> </ul> <p>If NET A indicator is steady red:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Configure the option module to use a unique IP address and cycle power.</li> </ul> <p>If NET A indicator is flashing red/green or red:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Check the IP address in the option module and scanner, and verify that the controller can communicate with the option module.</li> <li>Ping the option module.</li> <li>Normal condition if the option module is idle.</li> </ul>
Flashing Green	The option module is transmitting on the network.	No action required.

## Indications for Tap Mode Operation

Use the following sections to troubleshoot the Tap mode of operation.

### OK Status Indicator—Tap Mode

This red/green bicolor LED indicates the status of the option module as shown in the table below.

Status	Cause	Corrective Action
Off	The option module is not powered or is not properly connected to the drive.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Securely connect and ground the option module to the drive by fully inserting it into the drive port and tightening its two captive screws to the recommended torque.</li> <li>Apply power to the drive.</li> </ul>
Flashing Red	The option module is not communicating with the drive via DPI. The drive is in firmware upgrade mode. The option module has an EEPROM fault. The network address switches have been changed since powerup. A duplicate IP address fault has been detected. The DHCP lease has expired. The network address switches are set to "888." The network configuration (IP address, subnet mask, gateway address) is invalid. The User FPGA configuration is invalid.	View the option module event queue to determine which of these conditions is present. Then, depending on the cause, take the appropriate corrective action.
Steady Red	The option module is not communicating with the drive via DPI.	<b>Important:</b> Cycle power to the drive after making any of the following corrections: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Securely connect and ground the option module to the drive by fully inserting it into the drive port and tightening its two captive screws to the recommended torque.</li> <li>Verify that the drive supports the Comm Driver.</li> </ul>
Flashing Green	The option module is establishing DPI communication with the drive.	No action required. Normal behavior if no I/O is enabled.
Steady Green	The option module has established DPI communication with the drive.	No action required.

### LINK 1 Status Indicator—Tap Mode

This green/yellow bicolor LED indicates the status of the ENET1 network port as shown in the table below.

Status	Cause	Corrective Action
Off	The option module is not properly connected to the network.	Securely connect the option module to the network using an Ethernet cable. Also, make sure the Ethernet cable is correctly connected to the Ethernet connector.
Steady Green	ENET1 network port has a 100 Mbps network link, but no activity.	No action required.
Flashing Green	ENET1 network port has a 100 Mbps network link with activity.	No action required.
Steady Yellow	ENET1 network port has a 10 Mbps network link, but no activity.	No action required.
Flashing Yellow	ENET1 network port has a 10 Mbps network link with activity.	No action required.

## LINK 2 Status Indicator—Tap Mode

This green/yellow bicolor LED indicates the status of the ENET2 network port as shown in the table below.

Status	Cause	Corrective Action
Off	The option module is not properly connected to the network.	Securely connect the option module to the network using an Ethernet cable. Also, make sure the Ethernet cable is correctly connected to the Ethernet connector.
Steady Green	ENET2 network port has a 100 Mbps network link, but no activity.	No action required.
Flashing Green	ENET2 network port has a 100 Mbps network link with activity.	No action required.
Steady Yellow	ENET2 network port has a 10 Mbps network link, but no activity.	No action required.
Flashing Yellow	ENET2 network port has a 10 Mbps network link with activity.	No action required.

## LINK 3 Status Indicator—Tap Mode

This green/yellow LED indicates the status of the ENET3 (DEVICE) network port as shown in the table below.

Status	Cause	Corrective Action
Off	The option module is not properly connected to the network.	Securely connect the option module to the network using an Ethernet cable. Also, make sure the Ethernet cable is correctly connected to the Ethernet connector.
Steady Green	ENET3 network port has a 100 Mbps network link, but no activity.	No action required.
Flashing Green	ENET3 network port has a 100 Mbps network link with activity.	No action required.
Steady Yellow	ENET3 network port has a 10 Mbps network link, but no activity.	No action required.
Flashing Yellow	ENET3 network port has a 10 Mbps network link with activity.	No action required.

## Viewing Option Module Diagnostic Items

If you encounter unexpected communication problems, the option module's diagnostic items may help you or Rockwell Automation personnel troubleshoot the problem. Option module diagnostic items can be viewed with the PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM, DriveExplorer software, version 6.01 or later, or DriveExecutive software, version 5.01 or later. For details on viewing diagnostic items with the HIM, see the PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6/-C6S HIM (Human Interface Module) User Manual, publication [20HIM-UM001](#).

---

**IMPORTANT** Some diagnostic items are not applicable when operating the option module in Adapter mode while others are not applicable in Tap mode. Therefore, these non-applicable diagnostic items are labeled “Reserved” in [Table 10](#) and [Table 11](#).

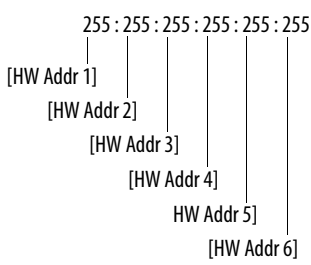
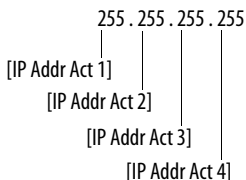
---

### Diagnostic Items for Adapter Mode Operation

**Table 10 - Adapter Mode Diagnostic Items**

No.	Name	Description
1	Common Logic Cmd	The present value of the Common Logic Command being transmitted to the drive by this option module.
2	Prod Logic Cmd	The present value of the Product Logic Command being transmitted to the drive by this option module.
3	Reference	The present value of the Reference being transmitted to the drive by this option module.
4	Common Logic Sts	The present value of the Common Logic Status being received from the drive by this option module.
5	Prod Logic Sts	The present value of the Product Logic Status being received from the drive by this option module.
6	Feedback	The present value of the Feedback being received from the drive by this option module.
7	Input Size	The size of the input image in bytes transferred from the network to the drive.
8	Output Size	The size of the output image in bytes transferred from the drive to the network.
9	DL Fr Net Avail	The number of <i>Host DL From Net xx</i> Datalinks currently available to the option module.
10	DL To Net Avail	The number of <i>Host DL To Net xx</i> Datalinks currently available to the option module.
11	DL Fr Net 01 Val	The present value of respective <i>Host DL From Net xx</i> parameter being transmitted to the drive by this option module. (If not using a Datalink, its respective value should be zero.)
12	DL Fr Net 02 Val	
13	DL Fr Net 03 Val	
14	DL Fr Net 04 Val	
15	DL Fr Net 05 Val	
16	DL Fr Net 06 Val	
17	DL Fr Net 07 Val	
18	DL Fr Net 08 Val	
19	DL Fr Net 09 Val	
20	DL Fr Net 10 Val	
21	DL Fr Net 11 Val	
22	DL Fr Net 12 Val	
23	DL Fr Net 13 Val	
24	DL Fr Net 14 Val	
25	DL Fr Net 15 Val	
26	DL Fr Net 16 Val	

Table 10 - Adapter Mode Diagnostic Items (Continued)

No.	Name	Description
27	DL To Net 01 Val	The present value of respective <i>Host DL To Net xx</i> parameter being received from the drive by this option module. (If not using a Datalink, its respective value should be zero.)
28	DL To Net 02 Val	
29	DL To Net 03 Val	
30	DL To Net 04 Val	
31	DL To Net 05 Val	
32	DL To Net 06 Val	
33	DL To Net 07 Val	
34	DL To Net 08 Val	
35	DL To Net 09 Val	
36	DL To Net 10 Val	
37	DL To Net 11 Val	
38	DL To Net 12 Val	
39	DL To Net 13 Val	
40	DL To Net 14 Val	
41	DL To Net 15 Val	
42	DL To Net 16 Val	
43	DPI Rx Errs	The present value of the DPI Receive error counter.
44	DPI Rx Errs Max	The maximum value (since reset) of the DPI Receive error counter.
45	DPI Tx Errs	The present value of the DPI Transmit error counter.
46	DPI Tx Errs Max	The maximum value (since reset) of the DPI Transmit error counter.
47	SI Primary Err	Number of CRC errors detected by the option module in the primary channel (Logic Status and Feedback) of the Serial Interface from the drive.
48	SI Secondary Err	Number of CRC errors detected by the option module in the secondary channel (Datalinks) of the Serial Interface from the drive.
49	HW Addr 1	Decimal value of each byte in the option module's Ethernet hardware address.  
50	HW Addr 2	
51	HW Addr 3	
52	HW Addr 4	
53	HW Addr 5	
54	HW Addr 6	
55	IP Addr Act 1	Value of each byte in the option module's present IP address. A value of "0" appears if the option module does not currently have an IP address.  
56	IP Addr Act 2	
57	IP Addr Act 3	
58	IP Addr Act 4	

**Table 10 - Adapter Mode Diagnostic Items (Continued)**

No.	Name	Description
59	Subnet Act 1	Value of each byte in the option module's present subnet mask. A value of "0" appears if the option module does not currently have a subnet mask. <div style="text-align: center;">             255 . 255 . 255 . 255                                               [Subnet Act 1]                                                     [Subnet Act 2]                                                       [Subnet Act 3]                                                         [Subnet Act 4]           </div>
60	Subnet Act 2	
61	Subnet Act 3	
62	Subnet Act 4	
63	Gateway Act 1	Value of each byte in the option module's present gateway address. A value of "0" appears if the option module does not currently have a gateway address. <div style="text-align: center;">             255 . 255 . 255 . 255                                               [Gateway Act 1]                                                     [Gateway Act 2]                                                       [Gateway Act 3]                                                         [Gateway Act 4]           </div>
64	Gateway Act 2	
65	Gateway Act 3	
66	Gateway Act 4	
67	Net Rx Overruns	The number of receive buffer overruns reported by the Ethernet hardware.
68	Net Rx Packets	The number of Ethernet packets that the option module has received.
69	Net Rx Errors	The number of receive errors reported by the Ethernet hardware.
70	Net Tx Packets	The number of Ethernet packets that the option module has sent.
71	Net Tx Errors	The number of transmit errors reported by the Ethernet hardware.
72	Missed IO Pkts	The number of incoming I/O connection packets that the option module did not receive.
73	Net Addr Sw	The present value of the option module node address (rotary) switches.
74	MDIX Status	Indicates the type of cable connected to the option module's ports. P1 = ENET1 network port and P2 = ENET2 network port.  Bit 0 - P1 Normal; Bit 1 - P1 Swapped; Bit 2 - P2 Normal; Bit 3 - P2 Swapped
75	Boot Flash Count	Number of times the boot firmware in the option module has been upgraded.
76	App Flash Count	Number of times the application firmware in the option module has been upgraded.
77	FPGA Flash Count	Number of times the FPGA configuration in the option module has been upgraded.



## Diagnostic Items for Tap Mode Operation

**Table 11 - Tap Mode Diagnostic Items**

No.	Name	Description
1	Common Logic Cmd	The present value of the Common Logic Command being transmitted to the drive by this option module.
2	Prod Logic Cmd	The present value of the Product Logic Command being transmitted to the drive by this option module.
3	Reference	The present value of the Reference being transmitted to the drive by this option module.
4	Common Logic Sts	The present value of the Common Logic Status being received from the drive by this option module.
5	Prod Logic Sts	The present value of the Product Logic Status being received from the drive by this option module.
6-42	Reserved	—
43	DPI Rx Errs	The present value of the DPI Receive error counter.
44	DPI Rx Errs Max	The maximum value (since reset) of the DPI Receive error counter.
45	DPI Tx Errs	The present value of the DPI Transmit error counter.
46	DPI Tx Errs Max	The maximum value (since reset) of the DPI Transmit error counter.
47-48	Reserved	—
49	HW Addr 1	Decimal value of each byte in the option module's Ethernet hardware address. 
50	HW Addr 2	
51	HW Addr 3	
52	HW Addr 4	
53	HW Addr 5	
54	HW Addr 6	
55	IP Addr Act 1	Value of each byte in the option module's present IP address. A value of "0" appears if the option module does not currently have an IP address. 
56	IP Addr Act 2	
57	IP Addr Act 3	
58	IP Addr Act 4	
59	Subnet Act 1	Value of each byte in the option module's present subnet mask. A value of "0" appears if the option module does not currently have a subnet mask. 
60	Subnet Act 2	
61	Subnet Act 3	
62	Subnet Act 4	
63	Gateway Act 1	Value of each byte in the option module's present gateway address. A value of "0" appears if the option module does not currently have a gateway address. 
64	Gateway Act 2	
65	Gateway Act 3	
66	Gateway Act 4	

**Table 11 - Tap Mode Diagnostic Items (Continued)**

No.	Name	Description
67	Net Rx Overruns	The number of receive buffer overruns reported by the Ethernet hardware.
68	Net Rx Packets	The number of Ethernet packets that the option module has received.
69	Net Rx Errors	The number of receive errors reported by the Ethernet hardware.
70	Net Tx Packets	The number of Ethernet packets that the option module has sent.
71	Net Tx Errors	The number of transmit errors reported by the Ethernet hardware.
72	Reserved	—
73	Net Addr Sw	The present value of the option module node address (rotary) switches.
74	MDIX Status	Indicates the type of cable connected to the option module's ports. P1 = ENET1 network port, P2 = ENET2 network port, and P3 = ENET3 (DEVICE) port.  Bit 0 - P1 Normal; Bit 1 - P1 Swapped; Bit 2 - P2 Normal; Bit 3 - P2 Swapped; Bit 4 - P3 Normal; Bit 5 - P3 Swapped
75	Boot Flash Count	Number of times the boot firmware in the option module has been upgraded.
76	App Flash Count	Number of times the application firmware in the option module has been upgraded.
77	FPGA Flash Count	Number of times the FPGA configuration in the option module has been upgraded.

## Viewing and Clearing Events

The option module has an event queue to record significant events that occur in the operation of the module. When such an event occurs, an entry consisting of the event's numeric code and a timestamp is put into the event queue. You can view the event queue with the PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM, DriveExplorer software, version 6.01 or later, DriveExecutive software, version 5.01 or later, or other clients using the DPI Fault object. For details on viewing and clearing events with the HIM, see the PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6/-C6S HIM (Human Interface Module) User Manual, publication [20HIM-UM001](#).

The event queue can contain up to 32 entries, which are stored in an EEPROM chip—making the event queue nonvolatile. Eventually the event queue will become full, since its contents are retained through option module power cycles and resets. At that point, a new entry replaces the oldest entry. Only an event queue clear operation or the corruption of the EEPROM group containing the event queue will clear the event queue contents. In the latter case, the option module will not generate a fault to indicate that the event queue was corrupted.

Resetting the option module to defaults has no effect on the event queue, other than to log a Code 58 “Module Defaulted” event.

Many events in the event queue occur under normal operation. If you encounter unexpected communication problems, the events may help you or Allen-Bradley personnel troubleshoot the problem. The following events may appear in the event queue.

Table 12 - Option Module Events

Code	Event Text	Description
<b>Option Module Events</b>		
1	No Event	Text displayed in an empty event queue entry.
2	Device Power Up	Power was applied to the option module.
3	Device Reset	The option module was reset.
4	EEPROM CRC Error	The EEPROM checksum/CRC is incorrect, which limits option module functionality. Default parameter values must be loaded to clear this condition.
5	App Updated	The option module application firmware was updated.
6	Boot Updated	The option module boot firmware was updated.
7	Watchdog Timeout	The software watchdog detected a failure and reset the option module.
<b>DPI Events</b>		
8	DPI Bus Off	A bus-off condition was detected on DPI.
9	DPI Ping Timeout	A ping message was not received on DPI within the specified time.
10	DPI Port Invalid	The option module was not connected to a valid port on a DPI product.
11	DPI Port Changed	The DPI port changed after startup.
12	DPI Host Reset	The drive sent a reset event message.
13	DPI Baud 125kbps	The option module detected that the drive was communicating at 125 Kbps.
14	DPI Baud 500kbps	The option module detected that the drive was communicating at 500 Kbps.
15	DPI Host Invalid	The option module was connected to an incompatible product.
16	DPI Dup Port	Another peripheral with the same port number is already in use.
17	DPI Type 0 Logon	The option module has logged in for Type 0 control.
18	DPI Type 0 Time	The option module has not received a Type 0 status message within the specified time.
19	DPI DL Logon	The option module has logged into a Datalink.
20	DPI DL Error	The drive rejected an attempt to log in to a Datalink because the Datalink is not supported or is used by another peripheral.
21	DPI DL Time	The option module has not received a Datalink message within the specified time.
22	DPI Ctrl Disable	The option module has sent a "Soft Control Disable" command to the drive.
23	DPI Ctrl Enable	The option module has sent a "Soft Control Enable" command to the drive.
24	DPI Msg Timeout	A Client-Server message sent by the option module was not completed within 1 second.
25	DPI Manual Reset	The option module was reset by changing its Reset Module parameter.
<b>SI Events</b>		
26	SI Online	The option module has logged into the Serial Interface Communication.
27	SI Logon Error	The option module failed to log into the Serial Interface.
28	SI Comm Fault	The Serial Interface Communication has faulted.
<b>Network Events</b>		
29-30	Reserved	—
31	Net Dup Address	The option module uses the same address as another device on the network.
32	Net Comm Fault	The option module detected a communication fault on the network.
33	Net Sent Reset	The option module received a reset from the network.
34	Net IO Close	An I/O connection from the network to the option module was closed.
35	Net Idle Fault	The option module received "idle" packets from the network.
36	Net IO Open	An I/O connection from the network to the option module has been opened.

**Table 12 - Option Module Events (Continued)**

Code	Event Text	Description
37	Net IO Timeout	An I/O connection from the network to the option module has timed out.
38	Net IO Size Err	The option module received an incorrectly sized I/O packet.
39	PCCC IO Close	The device sending PCCC Control messages to the option module has set the PCCC Control Timeout to zero.
40	PCCC IO Open	The option module has begun receiving PCCC control messages (the PCCC Control Timeout was previously set to a non-zero value).
41	PCCC IO Timeout	The option module has not received a PCCC Control message for longer than the PCCC Control Timeout.
42	Msg Ctrl Open	The timeout attribute in either the CIP Register or Assembly object was written with a non-zero value, allowing control messages to be sent to the option module.
43	Msg Ctrl Close	The timeout attribute in either the CIP Register or Assembly object was written with a zero value, disallowing control messages to be sent to the option module.
44	Msg Ctrl Timeout	The timeout attribute in either the CIP Register or Assembly object elapsed between accesses of those objects.
45	Peer IO Open	The option module received the first Peer I/O message.
46	Peer IO Timeout	The option module has not received a Peer I/O message for longer than the Peer I/O Timeout.
47-54	Reserved	—
55	BOOTP Response	The option module received a response to its BOOTP request.
56	E-mail Failed	The option module encountered an error attempting to send a requested e-mail message.
57	Reserved	—
58	Module Defaulted	The option module has been set to defaults.
59	FPGA Fact Load	The option module has loaded the Factory configuration into its FPGA.
60	FPGA User Load	The option module has loaded the User configuration into its FPGA.
61	Net Link 1 Up	A network link was available for the option module on its ENET1 network port.
62	Net Link 1 Down	The network link was removed from the option module on its ENET1 network port.
63	Net Link 2 Up	A network link was available for the option module on its ENET2 network port.
64	Net Link 2 Down	The network link was removed from the option module on its ENET2 network port.
65	Net Link 3 Up	A network link was available for the option module on its ENET3 (DEVICE) network port.
66	Net Link 3 Down	The network link was removed from the option module on its ENET3 (DEVICE) network port.
67	Net Ring Up	The Device-Level Ring (DLR) status is Normal.
68	Net Ring Down	The Device-Level Ring (DLR) status is Faulted.
69	Invalid Net Cfg	The option module's network address configuration parameters are invalid, or the network address provided by the BOOTP or DHCP server is invalid.
70	DHCP Response	The option module received a response to its DHCP request.
71	DHCP Renew	The option module renewed its network address lease with the DHCP server.
72	DHCP Rebind	The option module rebinded its network address lease with the DHCP server.
73	DHCP Release	The option module's network address lease expired.

## Viewing Option Module Web Pages

This chapter provides instructions on how to monitor the PowerFlex 750-Series drive and its EtherNet/IP option module by using the module's web interface.

Topic	Page
<a href="#">Enabling the Option Module Web Pages</a>	125
<a href="#">Viewing Web Pages in Adapter Mode</a>	125
<a href="#">Adapter Mode Process Display Pop-up Dialog Box</a>	128
<a href="#">Adapter Mode TCP/IP Configuration Web Page</a>	129
<a href="#">Adapter Mode Configure E-mail Notification Web Page</a>	130
<a href="#">Adapter Mode Device Information Pages</a>	133
<a href="#">Viewing Web Pages in Tap Mode</a>	136

Future enhancements may result in option module web pages that look different than the examples shown in this chapter.

### Enabling the Option Module Web Pages

After the option module is configured and operating, you can view its web pages. They present information about the module, the drive to which it is connected, and the other DPI devices connected to the drive such as a HIM.

---

**IMPORTANT** Depending on its selected operating mode (Adapter or Tap), the option module provides a unique set of web pages with different information.

---

By default the option module web pages are disabled. To enable the option module web pages, set *Device Parameter 26 - [Web Enable]* to "1" (Enabled).

### Viewing Web Pages in Adapter Mode

In Adapter mode, the option module can be configured to automatically send e-mail messages to desired addresses when selected drive faults occur and/or are cleared, and/or when the option module takes a communication or idle fault action.

Bit 0 of *Device Parameter 27 - [Web Features]* can be used to protect the configured settings. For more details, see [Adapter Mode Configure E-mail Notification Web Page on page 130](#).

1. On a computer with access to the EtherNet/IP network on which the drive/option module is installed, launch a web browser such as Microsoft™ Internet Explorer software, version 5.0 or later.

The computer can access option module web pages if it is connected to:

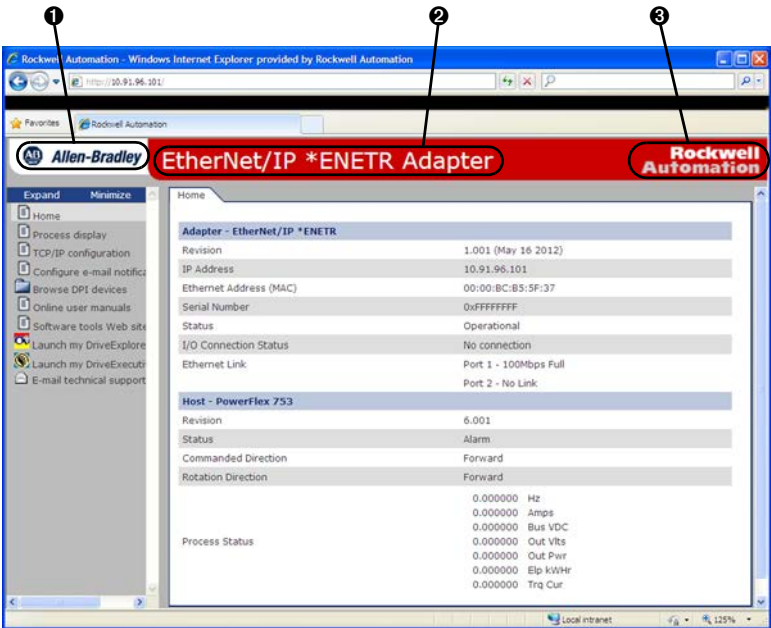
- The same network as the drive/option module.
  - A network with access to the drive/option module’s network via a gateway device (for example, a router).
2. In the Address box, type the IP address of the option module.
  3. Press ENTER.

The option module Adapter mode web Home Page ([Figure 38](#)) appears.

**IMPORTANT**

From the browser’s View menu, choose Refresh to always re-display the option module Home Page while viewing any of the module’s other web pages.

Figure 38 - Adapter Mode Web Home Page Example



Title Bar on Adapter Mode Web Pages

The title bar appears on the option module Adapter mode Home Page and all of the module’s other Adapter mode web pages. The title bar consists of three elements as shown in [Figure 38](#).

Title Bar Element	Description
❶ Allen-Bradley logo	This logo is a hyperlink. Click it to view the ab.com web Home Page.
❷ Option Module Title	Shows the option module type or user-configured title.
❸ Rockwell Automation logo	This logo is a hyperlink. Click it to view the Rockwell Automation web Home Page.

## Navigation Pane on Adapter Mode Web Pages

The navigation pane appears on the left side of the option module Adapter mode Home Page and all of the module's other Adapter mode web pages. The navigation pane consists of links and link folders which can be expanded or minimized. The following table shows all navigation pane links and link folders.

Navigation Pane Link/Folder	Description
Home link	Click this link to view the module's Adapter mode Home Page ( <a href="#">Figure 38</a> ).
Process display link	Click this link to view the host drive's Process Display pop-up dialog box ( <a href="#">Figure 39</a> ).
TCP/IP configuration link	Click this link to view the module's TCP/IP Configuration web page showing information about the TCP/IP configuration, such as the module's IP address and the number of packets being sent. <a href="#">Figure 40</a> shows an example TCP/IP Configuration web page.
Configure e-mail notification link	Click this link to view the module's Configure E-mail Notification web page ( <a href="#">Figure 41</a> ) to configure the option module to send automatic e-mail messages. An example e-mail message is shown in <a href="#">Figure 43</a> .
Browse DPI devices folder	Click this folder to expand and view the Port folders for all present devices, including the drive, option module, and other devices connected to the drive such as a HIM.
Port x folders	Click a respective Port folder to expand and view its device's various links which take you to related information pages. For Port 0 (PowerFlex 750-Series drive) example information pages, see <a href="#">Figure 44</a> , <a href="#">Figure 45</a> , and <a href="#">Figure 46</a> .
Online user manuals link	Click this link to view Rockwell Automation's web page with documentation for drives and other devices.
Software tools Web site link	Click this link to view Allen-Bradley's web page with information about software tools such as DriveExplorer and DriveExecutive.
Launch my DriveExplorer software link	Click this link to launch the DriveExplorer software already installed on your computer.
Launch my DriveExecutive software link	Click this link to launch the DriveExecutive software already installed on your computer.
E-mail technical support link	Click this link to view a new e-mail message dialog box to send a message to the Allen-Bradley Technical Support Team.

## Information on Adapter Mode Home Page

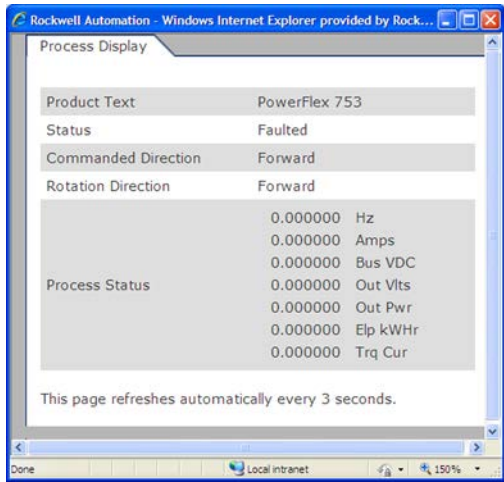
The option module Adapter mode Home Page displays the following information for the host PowerFlex 750-Series drive and its EtherNet/IP option module.

Device	Information
Adapter - EtherNet/IP *ENETR (Option Module)	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Revision</li> <li>• IP Address</li> <li>• Ethernet Address (MAC)</li> <li>• Serial Number</li> <li>• Status</li> <li>• I/O Connection Status</li> <li>• Ethernet Link</li> </ul>
Host PowerFlex 750-Series Drive	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Revision</li> <li>• Status</li> <li>• Commanded Direction</li> <li>• Rotation Direction</li> <li>• Process Status</li> </ul>

# Adapter Mode Process Display Pop-up Dialog Box

The Adapter mode Process Display pop-up dialog box dynamically shows the host drive’s information. To view this dialog box, click the “Process display” link in the navigation pane.

Figure 39 - Example of Adapter Mode Process Display Pop-up Dialog Box



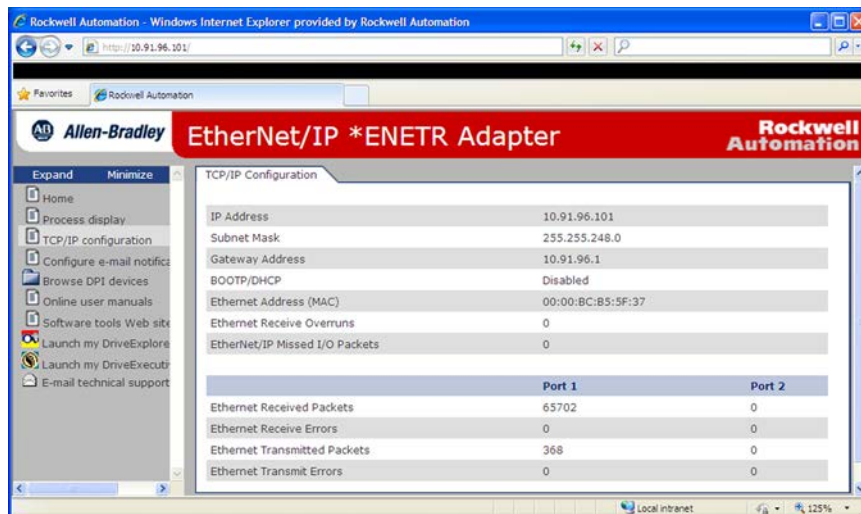
Information	Description
Product Text	Description of host drive.
Status	Status of host drive.
Commanded Direction	Commanded direction of host drive.
Rotation Direction	Rotation direction of host drive.
Process Status	
1st Line	Dynamic value of the host drive feedback parameter. This parameter is not selectable.
Lines 2 through 7	Dynamic value of each default-displayed host drive parameter. The displayed drive parameters for lines 2 through 7 are selectable using a HIM, DriveExecutive software, or DriveExplorer software.



## Adapter Mode TCP/IP Configuration Web Page

The Adapter mode TCP/IP Configuration web page provides information about the option module's Ethernet settings and network activities. To view this web page, click the "TCP/IP configuration" link (highlighted in [Figure 40](#)) in the navigation pane.

**Figure 40 - Example of Adapter Mode TCP/IP Configuration Web Page**

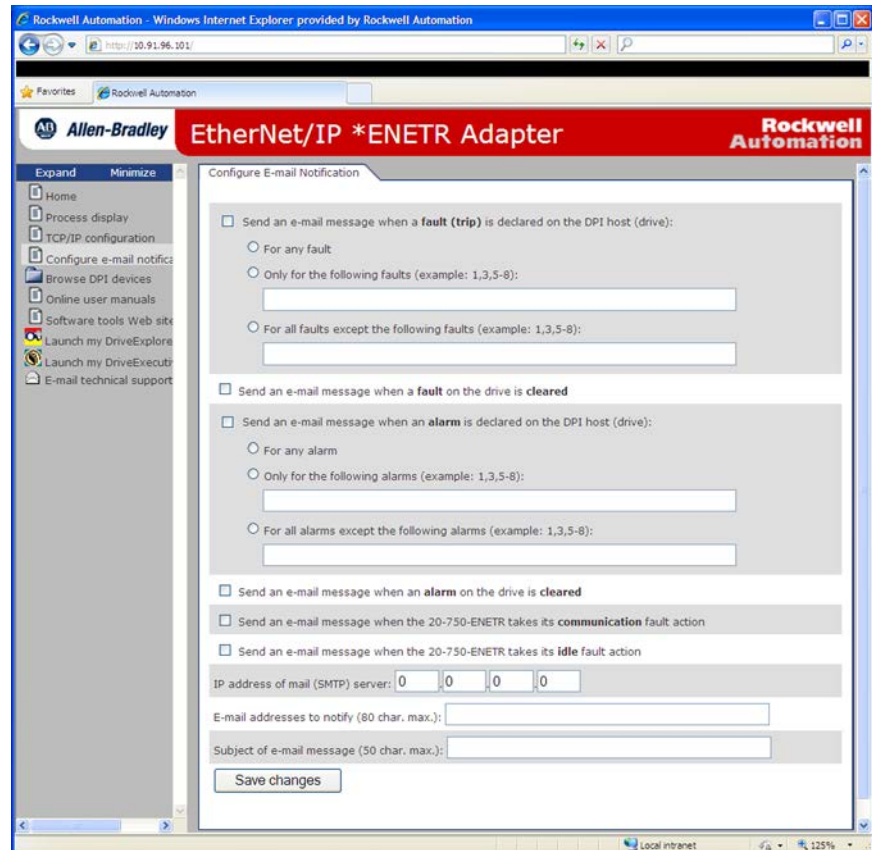


Information	Description
IP Address	IP address of the option module.
Subnet Mask	Subnet mask for the option module's network.
Gateway Address	Address for the gateway device on the option module's network.
BOOTP/DHCP	Shows status for BOOTP/DHCP, which may be used to configure the option module's network information.
Ethernet Address (MAC)	Hardware address for the option module.
Ethernet Receive Overruns	Number of packets that the option module has received in excess.
Ethernet Received Packets	Number of packets that the option module has received.
EtherNet/IP Missed I/O Packets	Number of I/O connection packets that the option module did not receive.
Ethernet Receive Errors	Number of receive errors reported by the hardware.
Ethernet Transmitted Packets	Number of packets that the option module has sent.
Ethernet Transmit Errors	Number of transmit errors reported by the hardware.

## Adapter Mode Configure E-mail Notification Web Page

The Adapter mode Configure E-mail Notification web page contains selections and data fields for configuring the option module to automatically send e-mail messages to desired addresses when selected types of events occur. To view this web page, click the “Configure e-mail” link (highlighted in [Figure 41](#)) in the navigation pane.

**Figure 41 - Example of Adapter Mode Configure E-mail Notification Web Page**



By default, settings are not protected. After configuration, settings can be protected by using *Device Parameter 27 - [Web Features]* to set E-mail Cfg Bit 0 value to “0” (Disabled). To change a protected configuration, it must first be unprotected by setting the E-mail Cfg Bit 0 value back to “1” (Enabled).

To configure e-mail notification, perform the following steps.

1. Click the desired check boxes corresponding to what you want to occur that will send e-mail notification.
  - If you want e-mail notification only when specific faults or alarms occur, click this radio button and enter the fault or alarm numbers in the box.
  - If you want e-mail notification only when all faults or alarms except specific faults or alarms occur, click this radio button and enter the fault or alarm numbers in the box.
2. Click the communication fault and/or idle fault check box if you want e-mail notification when these faults occur.

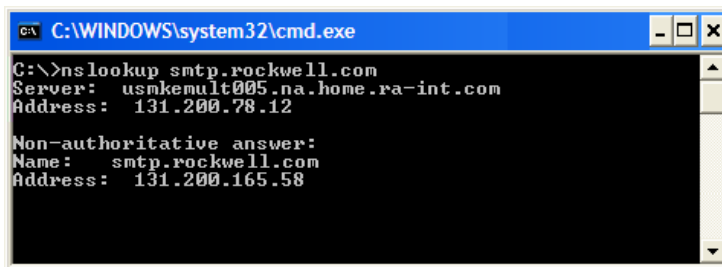
## 3. Type the following information in their respective boxes:

Information	Description
"IP address of. . ."	Type in the address of the mail server that will be used to deliver the e-mail messages. (When the IP address is unknown, read the TIP shown below this table to determine the mail server address.)
"E-mail addresses to notify. . ."	Type in addresses to where you want e-mail messages to be sent. Multiple addresses can be used, but they must be separated by commas (comma delimited).
"Subject of e-mail message. . ."	Type in the desired subject text for the e-mail message.

**TIP**

If the IP address of the e-mail server is unknown, you can contact your IT department or use the following DOS command instructions to find its IP address.

- From the Start menu on the Windows task bar, choose Run to display the Run dialog box.
  - In the Run dialog box Open field, type "cmd."
  - Click OK to display the DOS dialog box.
  - On the c:\> command line, type "nslookup [name of e-mail server]."
- The entry "c:\> nslookup smtp.company.com" is an example.
- Press ENTER to display the e-mail server IP address ([Figure 42](#)).
  - Type the second (bottom) IP address shown in the DOS dialog box (for this example, 131.200.165.58) into the E-mail Notification Web Page ([Figure 41](#)).

**Figure 42 - DOS Dialog Box Example Showing E-mail Server IP Address**

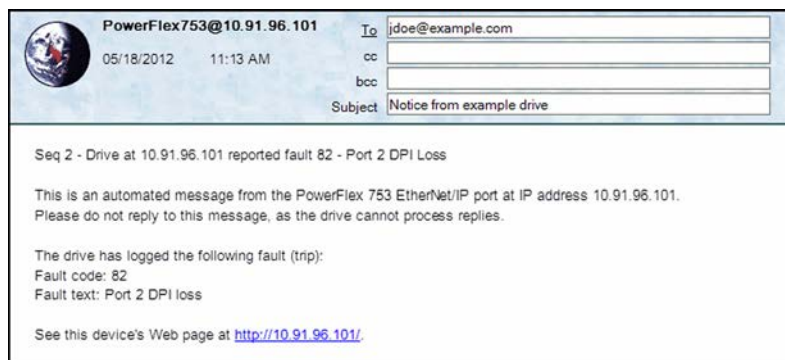
## 4. Click Save Changes.

**IMPORTANT**

After configuring E-mail Notification, it is recommended to protect the settings. Otherwise the configuration can be changed anytime the web page is accessed with a browser. To protect the settings, use *Device Parameter 27 - [Web Features]* to set E-mail Cfg Bit 0 value to "0" (Disabled).

Figure 43 shows an example e-mail message automatically sent by the option module in response to selected events.

**Figure 43 - Example of E-mail Message Sent by the Option Module**



**TIP**

To stop e-mail messages, uncheck all of the “Send an e-mail message when...” boxes.

Disabling the option module web pages by setting *Device Parameter 26 - [Web Enable]* to “0” (Disabled) will not stop the option module from sending e-mail messages.

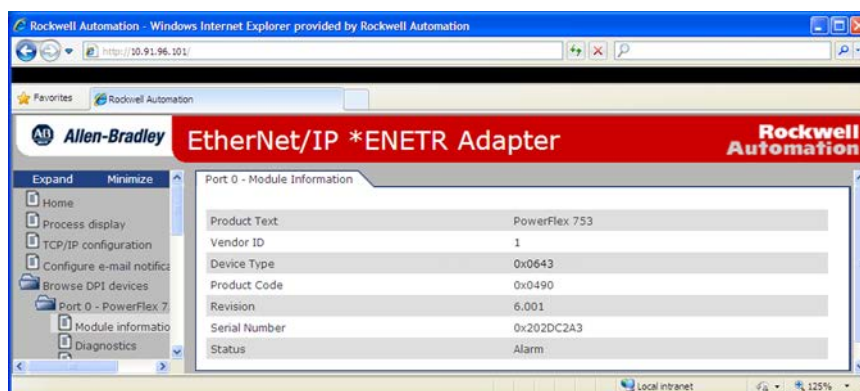
## Adapter Mode Device Information Pages

Adapter mode device information pages are viewed by clicking on the respective links in the navigation pane:

Adapter Mode Web Page	Description
Module Information	Shows module information for the respective drive Port device. For example, <a href="#">Figure 44</a> shows module information for the Port 0 device (host drive).
Diagnostic Items	Shows diagnostic item information for the respective drive Port device. For example, <a href="#">Figure 45</a> shows diagnostic items for the Port 0 device (host drive).
Fault Queue	Shows fault queue information for the respective drive Port device. For example, <a href="#">Figure 46</a> shows the fault queue for the Port 0 device (host drive).
Alarm Queue	Shows alarm queue information for the respective drive Port device. For example, <a href="#">Figure 47</a> shows the alarm queue for the Port 0 device (host drive).
Event Queue <sup>(1)</sup>	Shows event queue information for the respective drive Port device. For example, <a href="#">Figure 48</a> shows the event queue for the Port 4 device (EtherNet/IP option module).

(1) Information shown only when supported by the device.

**Figure 44 - Example of Adapter Mode Port 0 (PowerFlex 750-Series Drive) Module Information Page**



Information	Description
Product Text	Text identifying the device
Vendor ID	1 = Allen-Bradley
Device Type	0x0643 = PowerFlex 753 drive
Product Code	Code for the product name and its rating
Revision	Firmware revision used by the device
Serial Number	Serial number of the device
Status	Operating status of the device (for example, Alarm)

Figure 45 - Example of Adapter Mode Port 0 (PowerFlex 750-Series Drive) Diagnostic Items Page

Item no.	Description	Value	Units
1	MCB Pwrrup Time	5299470.	Secs
2	PBLT Pwrrup Time	725701.	Secs
3	PBLT GatesOnTime	0.000000	Secs
4	PBLT Mtr MW Hrs	0.000000	
5	PBLT Rgn MW Hrs	0.000000	
6	DAC Update Sel	0000 0000 0000 0000	
7	Spd Ref Command	Ref A Auto	
8	Theta Adjust 1	0.000000	

Figure 46 - Example of Adapter Mode Port 0 (PowerFlex 750-Series Drive) Fault Queue Page

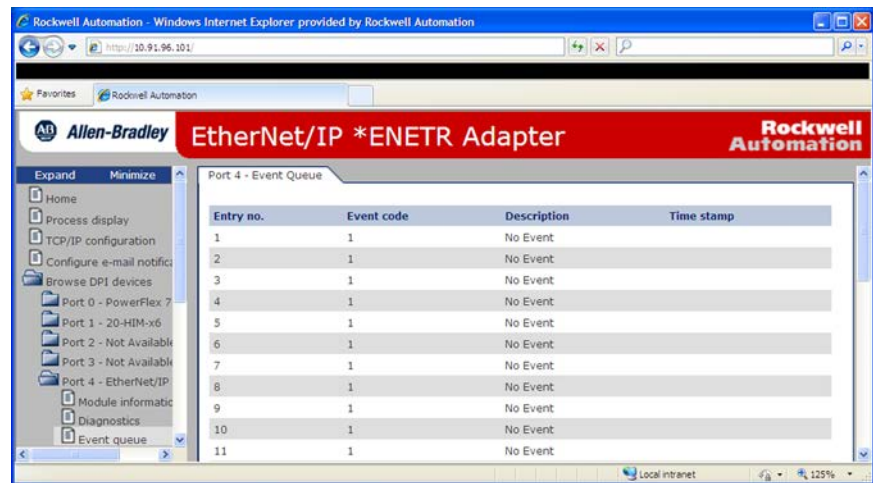
Entry no.	Fault code	Description	Time stamp
1	51	Clr Fault Queue	2012/05/24 22:26:20.357
2	0	No Entry	
3	0	No Entry	
4	0	No Entry	
5	0	No Entry	
6	0	No Entry	
7	0	No Entry	
8	0	No Entry	

Figure 47 - Example of Adapter Mode Port 0 (PowerFlex 750-Series Drive) Alarm Queue Page

Entry no.	Alarm code	Description	Time stamp
1	138	Precharge Open	
2	0	No Entry	
3	0	No Entry	
4	0	No Entry	
5	0	No Entry	
6	0	No Entry	
7	0	No Entry	
8	0	No Entry	

Figure 48 shows an example event queue page for the Port 4 device (EtherNet/IP option module).

**Figure 48 - Example of Adapter Mode Port 4 (20-750-ENETR Option Module) Event Queue Page**



The screenshot displays the Rockwell Automation web interface in a Windows Internet Explorer browser. The address bar shows the URL <http://20.91.96.101/>. The page title is "EtherNet/IP \*ENETR Adapter". The left navigation pane lists various options, with "Event queue" selected. The main content area, titled "Port 4 - Event Queue", contains a table with the following data:

Entry no.	Event code	Description	Time stamp
1	1	No Event	
2	1	No Event	
3	1	No Event	
4	1	No Event	
5	1	No Event	
6	1	No Event	
7	1	No Event	
8	1	No Event	
9	1	No Event	
10	1	No Event	
11	1	No Event	



## Viewing Web Pages in Tap Mode

In Tap mode, the option module has a different set of web pages than those shown when operated in Adapter mode.

1. On a computer with access to the EtherNet/IP network on which the drive/option module is installed, launch a web browser such as Microsoft™ Internet Explorer software, version 5.0 or later.

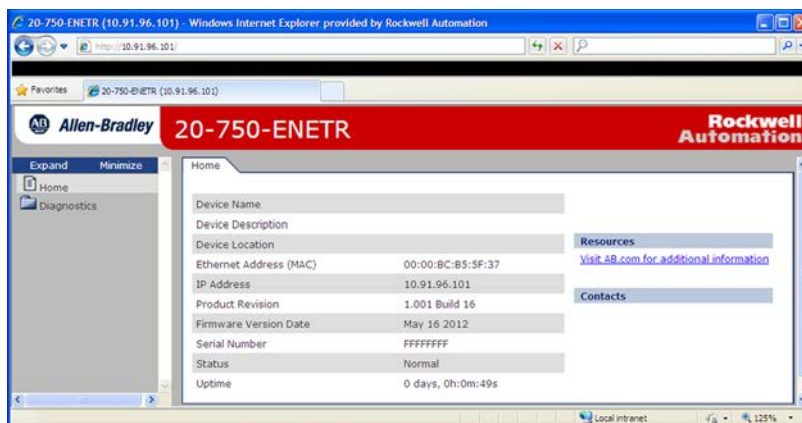
The computer can access option module web pages if it is connected to any of the following:

- The same network as the drive/option module
  - A network with access to the drive/option module network via a gateway device (for example, a router)
2. In the Address box, type the IP address of the option module
  3. Press ENTER.

The option module Tap mode web Home Page ([Figure 49](#)) appears.

**IMPORTANT** From the browser's View menu, choose Refresh to always re-display the option module Home Page while viewing any of the module's other web pages.

**Figure 49 - Tap Mode Web Home Page Example**



4. In the navigation pane, click Diagnostics to display links to the following web pages that contain the listed information.

Web Pages – Tap Mode	Information
Diagnostic Overview	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Module resource utilization</li> <li>• Web server read and write hits</li> <li>• Module settings</li> <li>• Ring status</li> <li>• Network management features</li> </ul>
Network Settings	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Network interface details, such as IP address and subnet mask</li> <li>• Ethernet interface configuration method</li> <li>• Ethernet port details</li> </ul>
Ethernet Statistics	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Ethernet counters</li> <li>• Ethernet port details</li> <li>• Error information</li> </ul>
Ring Statistics	Ring supervisor, configuration, and fault details



## Specifications

This appendix presents the specifications for the option module.

Topic	Page
<a href="#">Communication</a>	137
<a href="#">Electrical</a>	138
<a href="#">Mechanical</a>	138
<a href="#">Environmental</a>	138
<a href="#">Regulatory Compliance</a>	138

## Communication

This section contains communication specifications for the option module Adapter and Tap modes of operation.

### When Operating in Adapter Mode

Network	
Protocol	EtherNet/IP
Data Rates	10 Mbps Full Duplex, 10 Mbps Half Duplex, 100 Mbps Full Duplex, or 100 Mbps Half Duplex
Connection Limits	<p>30 TCP connections</p> <p>16 simultaneous explicit messaging connections plus one exclusive owner I/O connection</p> <p>The following activities use a CIP connection:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Class I I/O connections (for example, from a ControlLogix controller)</li> <li>• Explicit messaging where “connected” is chosen (for example, in a checkbox in RSLogix 5000 software)</li> <li>• DriveExecutive connections to the drive</li> </ul> <p>The following activities <u>do not</u> use a CIP connection:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• Explicit messaging-based control using PCCC or the Register or Assembly objects</li> <li>• Explicit messaging where “connected” is NOT chosen, which is typically the default</li> <li>• DriveExplorer connections to the drive</li> </ul>
Requested Packet Interval (RPI)	2 ms minimum
Packet Rate	Up to 1000 total I/O packets per second (500 in and 500 out)
Drive	
Protocol	DPI
Data Rates	500 kbps

## When Operating in Tap Mode

Network	
Protocol	EtherNet/IP
Data Rates	10 Mbps Full Duplex, 10 Mbps Half Duplex, 100 Mbps Full Duplex or 100 Mbps Half Duplex
Connection Limits	30 TCP connections 16 simultaneous explicit messaging connections  The following activity uses a CIP connection: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Explicit messaging where “connected” is chosen (for example, in a checkbox in RSLogix 5000 software)</li> </ul> The following activity <u>does not</u> use a CIP connection: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Explicit messaging where “connected” is NOT chosen, which is typically the default</li> </ul>
Drive	
Protocol	DPI
Data Rates	500 kbps

## Electrical

Consumption	
Drive	250 mA at 14 VDC supplied by the host drive
Network	None

## Mechanical

Dimensions	
Height	68 mm (2.7 inches)
Length	150 mm (5.9 inches)
Width	26 mm (1.0 inches)
Weight	62 g (2.1 oz.)

## Environmental

Temperature	
Operating	-10...50 °C (14...122 °F)
Storage	-40...85 °C (-40...185 °F)
Relative Humidity	5...95% non-condensing
Atmosphere	<b>Important:</b> The option module <b>must not</b> be installed in an area where the ambient atmosphere contains volatile or corrosive gas, vapors or dust. If the option module is not going to be installed for a period of time, it must be stored in an area where it will not be exposed to a corrosive atmosphere.

## Regulatory Compliance

Certification	Specification
UL	UL508C
cUL	CAN / CSA C22.2 No. 14-2010
CE	EN 61800-3
CTick	EN 61800-3

**NOTE:** This is a product of category C2 according to IEC 61800-3. In a domestic environment this product may cause radio interference in which case supplementary mitigation measures may be required.

## Option Module Parameters

This appendix provides information about the option module parameters.

Topic	Page
<a href="#">Parameter Types</a>	139
<a href="#">About Parameter Numbers</a>	140
<a href="#">How Parameters Are Organized</a>	140
<a href="#">Parameters for Adapter Mode Operation</a>	140
<a href="#">Parameters for Tap Mode Operation</a>	150

### Parameter Types

The option module has two types of parameters:

- *Device* parameters are used to configure the option module to operate on the network. *Device* parameters, when viewed using DriveExplorer or DriveExecutive, appear below the 20-750-ENETR listing in the treeview in a separate Device Parameters folder. When viewed with the 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM, these parameters appear in the DEV PARAM folder.

---

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	Some <i>Device</i> parameters are not applicable when operating the option module in Adapter mode while others are not applicable in Tap mode. Therefore, these non-applicable parameters are labeled “Reserved” in the Adapter Mode Operation and Tap Mode Operation parameter tables in this appendix.
------------------	--

---

- *Host* parameters are used to configure the option module Datalink transfer and various fault actions with the drive. *Host* parameters, when viewed using DriveExplorer or DriveExecutive, appear below the 20-750-ENETR listing in the treeview in a separate Host Parameters folder. When viewed with the 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM, these parameters appear in the HOST PARAM folder.

---

<b>IMPORTANT</b>	When operating the option module in Tap mode, <i>Host</i> parameters are NOT supported.
------------------	---

---

## About Parameter Numbers

Each parameter set is independently and consecutively numbered.

Configuration Tool	Numbering Scheme
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>HIM</li> <li>DriveExplorer</li> <li>DriveExecutive</li> </ul>	The <i>Device</i> parameters and <i>Host</i> parameters begin with parameter 01. For example, <i>Device Parameter 01 - [Port Number]</i> and <i>Host Parameter 01 - [Net to Drv DL 01]</i> are parameter 01 as indicated by this manual.
<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Explicit Messaging</li> </ul>	See <a href="#">Chapter 6</a> , Using Explicit Messaging (Adapter mode only) and <a href="#">Appendix C</a> , EtherNet/IP Objects (Adapter mode only) for details.

## How Parameters Are Organized

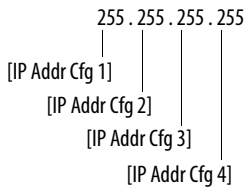
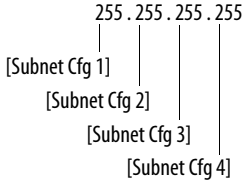
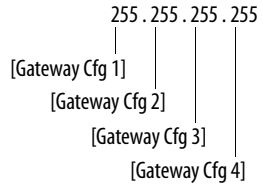
The *Device* Parameters and *Host* Parameters are separately displayed in a **Numbered List** view order.


## Parameters for Adapter Mode Operation

This section contains lists of *Device* parameters and *Host* parameters available when the option module is operated in Adapter mode.

### Device Parameters—Adapter Mode

Parameter			
No.	Name and Description	Details	
01	<b>[Operating Mode]</b> Displays the option module's operating mode set with the Operating Mode Jumper J4 ( <a href="#">Figure 1 on page 19</a> ).	Values:	0 = Adapter 1 = Tap
		Type:	Read Only
02	<b>[Port Number]</b> Displays the drive port into which the option module is installed. Typically, this is Port 4, 5 or 6.	Minimum:	4
		Maximum:	6
		Type:	Read Only
03	<b>[DLs From Net Act]</b> Displays the number of controller-to-drive Datalinks that the drive is using based on the I/O connection opened by the controller.	Minimum:	0
		Maximum:	16
		Type:	Read Only
04	<b>[DLs To Net Act]</b> Displays the number of drive-to-controller Datalinks that the controller is using based on the I/O connection opened by the controller.	Minimum:	0
		Maximum:	16
		Type:	Read Only
05	<b>[Net Addr Sel]</b> Selects the source from which the option module's node address is taken when the Node Address switches ( <a href="#">Figure 2 on page 21</a> ) are not being used (that is, switches set to any value other than 001...254 or 888).	Default:	3 = DHCP
		Values:	1 = Parameters 2 = BOOTP 3 = DHCP
		Type:	Read/Write
		Reset Required:	Yes
06	<b>[Net Addr Src]</b> Displays the source from which the option module's node address is taken.	Values:	0 = Switches 1 = Parameters 2 = BOOTP 3 = DHCP
		Type:	Read Only

Parameter		
No.	Name and Description	Details
07	<b>[IP Addr Cfg 1]</b> <b>[IP Addr Cfg 2]</b> <b>[IP Addr Cfg 3]</b> <b>[IP Addr Cfg 4]</b> Sets the IP address bytes for the option module's network address when <i>Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]</i> is set to "1" (Parameters) and the Node Address switches ( <a href="#">Figure 2 on page 21</a> ) are not being used (that is, switches set to any value other than 001...254 or 888).  	Default: 0
08		Default: 0
09		Default: 0
10		Default: 0
		Minimum: 0
		Maximum: 255
		Type: Read/Write
		Reset Required: Yes
11	<b>[Subnet Cfg 1]</b> <b>[Subnet Cfg 2]</b> <b>[Subnet Cfg 3]</b> <b>[Subnet Cfg 4]</b> Sets the subnet mask bytes for the option module's network address when <i>Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]</i> is set to "1" (Parameters) and the Node Address switches ( <a href="#">Figure 2 on page 21</a> ) are not being used (that is, switches set to any value other than 001...254 or 888).  	Default: 0
12		Default: 0
13		Default: 0
14		Default: 0
		Minimum: 0
		Maximum: 255
		Type: Read/Write
		Reset Required: Yes
15	<b>[Gateway Cfg 1]</b> <b>[Gateway Cfg 2]</b> <b>[Gateway Cfg 3]</b> <b>[Gateway Cfg 4]</b> Sets the gateway address bytes for the option module's network address when <i>Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]</i> is set to "1" (Parameters) and the Node Address switches ( <a href="#">Figure 2 on page 21</a> ) are not being used (that is, switches set to any value other than 001...254 or 888).  	Default: 0
16		Default: 0
17		Default: 0
18		Default: 0
		Minimum: 0
		Maximum: 255
		Type: Read/Write
		Reset Required: Yes
19	<b>[Net Rate Cfg 1]</b> Sets the speed and duplex network data rate at which the option module communicates on its ENET1 network port. (Updates <i>Device Parameter 20 - [Net Rate Act 1]</i> after a reset.)	Default: 0 = Autodetect Values: 0 = Autodetect 1 = 10 Mbps Full 2 = 10 Mbps Half 3 = 100 Mbps Full 4 = 100 Mbps Half 5 = Disabled Type: Read/Write Reset Required: Yes

Parameter																													
No.	Name and Description	Details																											
20	<b>[Net Rate Act 1]</b> Displays the actual speed and duplex network data rate for the option module's ENET1 network port.	Values: 0 = No Link 1 = 10 Mbps Full 2 = 10 Mbps Half 3 = 100 Mbps Full 4 = 100 Mbps Half 5 = Dup IP Addr Type: Read Only																											
21	<b>[Net Rate Cfg 2]</b> Sets the speed and duplex network data rate at which the option module communicates on its ENET2 network port. (Updates Device <b>Parameter 22 - [Net Rate Act 2]</b> after a reset.)	Default: 0 = Autodetect Values: 0 = Autodetect 1 = 10 Mbps Full 2 = 10 Mbps Half 3 = 100 Mbps Full 4 = 100 Mbps Half 5 = Disabled Type: Read/Write Reset Required: Yes																											
22	<b>[Net Rate Act 2]</b> Displays the actual speed and duplex network data rate for the option module's ENET2 network port.	Values: 0 = No Link 1 = 10 Mbps Full 2 = 10 Mbps Half 3 = 100 Mbps Full 4 = 100 Mbps Half 5 = Dup IP Addr Type: Read Only																											
23	<b>Reserved</b>																												
24	<b>Reserved</b>																												
25	<b>[Reset Module]</b> No action if set to "0" (Ready). Resets the option module if set to "1" (Reset Module). Restores the option module to its factory default settings if set to "2" (Set Defaults). This parameter is a command. It will be reset to "0" (Ready) after the command has been performed.  When performing a Set Defaults, the drive may detect a conflict. If this occurs, the drive will not allow a Set Defaults action. You must resolve the conflict before attempting a Set Defaults action for the option module.	Default: 0 = Ready Values: 0 = Ready 1 = Reset Module 2 = Set Defaults Type: Read/Write Reset Required: No																											
<div><b>ATTENTION:</b> Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. If the option module is transmitting I/O that controls the drive, the drive may fault when you reset the option module. Determine how your drive will respond before resetting the option module.</div>																													
26	<b>[Web Enable]</b> Enables/disables the option module's web pages.	Default: 0 = Disabled Values: 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled Type: Read/Write Reset Required: No																											
27	<b>[Web Features]</b> Enables/disables the web-configurable e-mail notification feature.	Type: Read/Write Reset Required: No																											
<table><tr><th>Bit Definition</th><th>Not Used</th><th>Not Used</th><th>Not Used</th><th>Not Used</th><th>Not Used</th><th>Not Used</th><th>Not Used</th><th>E-mail Cfg</th></tr><tr><td>Default</td><td>x</td><td>x</td><td>x</td><td>x</td><td>x</td><td>x</td><td>x</td><td>1</td></tr><tr><td>Bit</td><td>7</td><td>6</td><td>5</td><td>4</td><td>3</td><td>2</td><td>1</td><td>0</td></tr></table>		Bit Definition	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	E-mail Cfg	Default	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	1	Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0	0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled x = Reserved
Bit Definition	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	Not Used	E-mail Cfg																					
Default	x	x	x	x	x	x	x	1																					
Bit	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0																					

Parameter		
No.	Name and Description	Details
28	<p><b>[DLs Fr Peer Cfg]</b></p> <p>Sets the number of peer-to-drive Datalinks (parameters) that are used for peer I/O. The Datalinks being used are allocated from the end of the list. For example, if this parameter's value is set to "3," Datalinks 14...16 are allocated for the 3 selected Datalinks. The Datalinks allocated for peer I/O cannot overlap with other assigned DL From Net 01-16 parameters.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The option module allows the peer input configuration parameters to be written while peer inputs are running. However, the changes will not take effect until peer inputs are disabled and then re-enabled, or until the option module is power cycled or reset.</p>	<p>Default: 0</p> <p>Minimum: 0</p> <p>Maximum: 16</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
29	<p><b>[DLs Fr Peer Act]</b></p> <p>Displays the value of <i>Device Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]</i> at the time the option module was reset. This is the number of actual peer-to-drive Datalinks that the option module is expecting.</p>	<p>Minimum: 0</p> <p>Maximum: 16</p> <p>Type: Read Only</p>
30	<p><b>[Logic Src Cfg]</b></p> <p>Controls which of the peer-to-drive Datalinks contain the Logic Command for the drive. The value zero specifies that none of the Datalinks contain the drive's Logic Command. Non-zero values specify the <i>index</i> for the Datalink containing the drive's Logic Command. For example, if <b>Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]</b> has the value 3 specifying that Datalinks 14...16 are allocated for peer I/O and <b>Parameter 30 - [Logic Src Cfg]</b> has the value 1 specifying that the first peer I/O Datalink contains the drive's Logic Command, then Datalink 14 contains the drive's Logic Command.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The option module allows the peer input configuration parameters to be written while peer inputs are running. However, the changes will not take effect until peer inputs are disabled and then re-enabled, or until the option module is power cycled or reset.</p>	<p>Default: 0</p> <p>Minimum: 0</p> <p>Maximum: 16</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
31	<p><b>[Ref Src Cfg]</b></p> <p>Controls which of the peer-to-drive Datalinks contain the Reference for the drive. The value zero specifies that none of the Datalinks contain the drive's Reference. Non-zero values specify the <i>index</i> for the Datalink containing the drive's Reference. For example, if <b>Parameter 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]</b> has the value 3 specifying that Datalinks 14...16 are allocated for peer I/O and <b>Parameter 31 - [Ref Src Cfg]</b> has the value 1 specifying that the first peer I/O Datalink contains the drive's Reference, then Datalink 14 contains the drive's Reference.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The option module allows the peer input configuration parameters to be written while peer inputs are running. However, the changes will not take effect until peer inputs are disabled and then re-enabled, or until the option module is power cycled or reset.</p>	<p>Default: 0</p> <p>Minimum: 0</p> <p>Maximum: 16</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>



Parameter		
No.	Name and Description	Details
32	<p><b>[Fr Peer Timeout]</b></p> <p>Sets the timeout for a peer I/O connection. If the time is reached without the option module receiving (consuming) a message, the option module will respond with the action specified in <b>Host Parameter 35 - [Peer Flt Action]</b>.</p> <p>In an option module receiving (consuming) peer I/O, the value of this parameter must be greater than the product of the value of <b>Device Parameter 41 - [To Peer Period]</b> in the option module transmitting (producing) peer I/O multiplied by the value of <b>Device Parameter 42 - [To Peer Skip]</b> in the option module transmitting (producing) peer I/O.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The option module allows the peer input configuration parameters to be written while peer inputs are running. However, the changes will not take effect until peer inputs are disabled and then re-enabled, or until the option module is power cycled or reset.</p>	<p>Default: 10.00 Seconds</p> <p>Minimum: 0.01 Seconds</p> <p>Maximum: 10.00 Seconds</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
33	<p><b>[Fr Peer Addr 1]</b></p> <p><b>[Fr Peer Addr 2]</b></p> <p><b>[Fr Peer Addr 3]</b></p> <p><b>[Fr Peer Addr 4]</b></p> <p>Sets the IP address bytes that specify the device from which the option module receives (consumes) peer I/O data.</p> <div style="text-align: center;"> <p>255 . 255 . 255 . 255</p> <p>                   </p> <p>[Fr Peer Addr 1]   [Fr Peer Addr 2]   [Fr Peer Addr 3]   [Fr Peer Addr 4]</p> </div> <p><b>Important:</b> The Fr Peer Addr must be on the same subnet as the option module. See <a href="#">IP Addresses on page 192</a> for more information.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The option module allows the peer input configuration parameters to be written while peer inputs are running. However, the changes will not take effect until peer inputs are disabled and then re-enabled, or until the option module is power cycled or reset.</p>	<p>Default: 0</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Default: 0</p> <p>Minimum: 0</p> <p>Maximum: 255</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
34		
35		
36		
37	<p><b>[Fr Peer Enable]</b></p> <p>Controls whether peer I/O input is operating. A value of "0" (Off) turns off peer I/O input. A value of "1" (Cmd/Ref) overrides the settings in <b>Device Parameters 28 - [DLs Fr Peer Cfg]</b>, <b>30 - [Logic Src Cfg]</b>, and <b>31 - [Ref Src Cfg]</b> and automatically uses peer Datalink 01 as the drive's present Logic Command and peer Datalink 02 as the drive's Reference. A value of "2" (Custom) enables peer I/O input using the Datalink count and settings provided by the user.</p> <p>If the value of this parameter is changed from "1" (Cmd/Ref) to "2" (Custom) or from "2" (Custom) to "1" (Cmd/Ref) while peer I/O is running, the drive will be commanded to do its Peer Fault Action before the peer input mode is changed.</p>	<p>Default: 0 = Off</p> <p>Values: 0 = Off</p> <p>1 = Cmd/Ref</p> <p>2 = Custom</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
38	<p><b>[Fr Peer Status]</b></p> <p>Displays the status of the consumed peer I/O input connection.</p>	<p>Values: 0 = Off</p> <p>1 = Waiting</p> <p>2 = Running</p> <p>3 = Faulted</p> <p>Type: Read Only</p>





Parameter		
No.	Name and Description	Details
39	<p><b>[DLs To Peer Cfg]</b></p> <p>Sets the number of drive-to-peer Datalinks (parameters) that are used for peer I/O. The Datalinks being used are allocated from the end of the list. For example, if this parameter's value is set to "3", Datalinks 14...16 are allocated for the 3 selected Datalinks. The Datalinks allocated for this cannot overlap with other assigned DL To Net 01-16 parameters.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The option module allows the peer output configuration parameters to be written while peer outputs are running. However, the changes will not take effect until peer outputs are disabled and then re-enabled, or until the option module is power cycled or reset.</p>	<p>Default: 0</p> <p>Minimum: 0</p> <p>Maximum: 16</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: Yes</p>
40	<p><b>[DLs To Peer Act]</b></p> <p>Displays the value of <i>Device Parameter 39 - [DLs To Peer Cfg]</i> at the time the option module was reset. This is the number of actual drive-to-peer Datalinks that the option module is expecting.</p>	<p>Minimum: 0</p> <p>Maximum: 16</p> <p>Type: Read Only</p>
41	<p><b>[To Peer Period]</b></p> <p>Sets the minimum time that the option module will wait when transmitting data to a peer.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The option module allows the peer output configuration parameters to be written while peer outputs are running. However, the changes will not take effect until peer outputs are disabled and then re-enabled, or until the option module is power cycled or reset.</p>	<p>Default: 10.00 Seconds</p> <p>Minimum: 0.01 Seconds</p> <p>Maximum: 10.00 Seconds</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
42	<p><b>[To Peer Skip]</b></p> <p>Sets the maximum time that the option module will wait when transmitting data to a peer. The value of <i>Device Parameter 41 - [To Peer Period]</i> is multiplied by the value of this parameter to set the time.</p> <p><b>NOTE:</b> The option module allows the peer output configuration parameters to be written while peer outputs are running. However, the changes will not take effect until peer outputs are disabled and then re-enabled, or until the option module is power cycled or reset.</p>	<p>Default: 1</p> <p>Minimum: 1</p> <p>Maximum: 16</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
43	<p><b>[To Peer Enable]</b></p> <p>Controls whether peer I/O output is operating. A value of "0" (Off) or "1" (Reserved) turns off peer I/O output. A value of "2" (Custom) enables peer I/O output using the Datalink count and settings provided by the user.</p>	<p>Default: 0 = Off</p> <p>Values: 0 = Off</p> <p>1 = Reserved</p> <p>2 = Custom</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>

## Host Parameters—Adapter Mode

Parameter			
No.	Name and Description	Details	
01	[DL From Net 01]	Default:	0
02	[DL From Net 02]	Default:	0
03	[DL From Net 03]	Default:	0
04	[DL From Net 04]	Default:	0
05	[DL From Net 05]	Default:	0
06	[DL From Net 06]	Default:	0
07	[DL From Net 07]	Default:	0
08	[DL From Net 08]	Default:	0
09	[DL From Net 09]	Default:	0
10	[DL From Net 10]	Default:	0
11	[DL From Net 11]	Default:	0
12	[DL From Net 12]	Default:	0
13	[DL From Net 13]	Default:	0
14	[DL From Net 14]	Default:	0
15	[DL From Net 15]	Default:	0
16	[DL From Net 16]	Default:	0
	Sets the port number and parameter number to which the selected Datalinks should connect. Each selected port/parameter will be written with data received from the network. These are parameters written by the controller (outputs from the controller).	Minimum:	0
		Maximum:	159999
		Type:	Read/Write
		Reset Required:	No
	If setting the value manually, the parameter value = (10000 * port number) + (destination parameter number). For example, suppose you want to use <b>Host Parameter 01 - [DL From Net 01]</b> to write to Parameter 01 of an optional encoder module plugged into drive Port 5. The value for <b>Host Parameter 01 - [DL From Net 01]</b> would be 50001 [(10000 * 5) + 1].		
17	[DL To Net 01]	Default:	0
18	[DL To Net 02]	Default:	0
19	[DL To Net 03]	Default:	0
20	[DL To Net 04]	Default:	0
21	[DL To Net 05]	Default:	0
22	[DL To Net 06]	Default:	0
23	[DL To Net 07]	Default:	0
24	[DL To Net 08]	Default:	0
25	[DL To Net 09]	Default:	0
26	[DL To Net 10]	Default:	0
27	[DL To Net 11]	Default:	0
28	[DL To Net 12]	Default:	0
29	[DL To Net 13]	Default:	0
30	[DL To Net 14]	Default:	0
31	[DL To Net 15]	Default:	0
32	[DL To Net 16]	Default:	0
	Sets the port number and parameter number to which the selected Datalinks should connect. Each selected port/parameter will be read and their values transmitted over the network to the controller. These are parameters read by the controller (inputs to the controller).	Minimum:	0
		Maximum:	159999
		Type:	Read/Write
		Reset Required:	No
	If setting the value manually, the parameter value = (10000 * port number) + (origination parameter number). For example, suppose you want to use <b>Host Parameter 17 - [DL To Net 01]</b> to read Parameter 02 of an optional I/O module plugged into drive Port 6. The value for <b>Host Parameter 17 - [DL To Net 01]</b> would be 60002 [(10000 * 6) + 2].		

Parameter		
No.	Name and Description	Details
33	<p><b>[Comm Flt Action]</b></p> <p>Sets the action that the option module and drive will take if the option module detects that I/O communication has been disrupted. This setting is effective only if I/O that controls the drive is transmitted through the option module. When communication is re-established, the drive will automatically receive commands over the network again.</p>	<p>Default: 0 = Fault</p> <p>Values: 0 = Fault 1 = Stop 2 = Zero Data 3 = Hold Last 4 = Send Flt Cfg</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
	<p> <b>ATTENTION:</b> Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. <i>Host</i></p> <p><b>Parameter 33 - [Comm Flt Action]</b> lets you determine the action of the option module and connected drive if I/O communication is disrupted. By default, this parameter faults the drive. You may configure this parameter so that the drive continues to run, however, precautions should be taken to verify that the setting of this parameter does not create a risk of injury or equipment damage. When commissioning the drive, verify that your system responds correctly to various situations (for example, a disconnected cable).</p>	
34	<p><b>[Idle Flt Action]</b></p> <p>Sets the action that the option module and drive will take if the option module detects that the controller is in program mode or faulted. This setting is effective only if I/O that controls the drive is transmitted through the option module. When the controller is put back in Run mode, the drive will automatically receive commands over the network again.</p>	<p>Default: 0 = Fault</p> <p>Values: 0 = Fault 1 = Stop 2 = Zero Data 3 = Hold Last 4 = Send Flt Cfg</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
	<p> <b>ATTENTION:</b> Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. <i>Host</i></p> <p><b>Parameter 34 - [Idle Flt Action]</b> lets you determine the action of the option module and connected drive when the controller is idle. By default, this parameter faults the drive. You may configure this parameter so that the drive continues to run, however, precautions should be taken to verify that the setting of this parameter does not create a risk of injury or equipment damage. When commissioning the drive, verify that your system responds correctly to various situations (for example, a controller in idle state).</p>	

Parameter		
No.	Name and Description	Details
35	<p><b>[Peer Flt Action]</b></p> <p>Sets the action that the option module and drive will take if the option module detects that peer I/O communication has been disrupted. This setting is effective only if I/O is transmitted through the option module. When peer I/O communication is re-established, the drive will automatically receive commands over the network again.</p>	<p>Default: 0 = Fault</p> <p>Values: 0 = Fault 1 = Stop 2 = Zero Data 3 = Hold Last 4 = Send Flt Cfg</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
	<p> <b>ATTENTION:</b> Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. <i>Host Parameter 35 - [Peer Flt Action]</i> lets you determine the action of the option module and connected drive if the option module is unable to communicate with the designated peer. By default, this parameter faults the drive. You may configure this parameter so that the drive continues to run, however, precautions should be taken to verify that the setting of this parameter does not create a risk of injury or equipment damage. When commissioning the drive, verify that your system responds correctly to various situations (for example, a controller in idle state).</p>	
36	<p><b>[Msg Flt Action]</b></p> <p>Sets the action that the option module and drive will take if the option module detects that explicit messaging—only when used for drive control via the PCCC, CIP Assembly or CIP Register objects—has been disrupted. When explicit messaging is re-established, data is automatically received/sent over the network again.</p>	<p>Default: 0 = Fault</p> <p>Values: 0 = Fault 1 = Stop 2 = Zero Data 3 = Hold Last 4 = Send Flt Cfg</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>
	<p> <b>ATTENTION:</b> Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. <i>Host Parameter 36 - [Msg Flt Action]</i> lets you determine the action of the option module and connected drive if explicit messaging for drive control is disrupted. By default, this parameter faults the drive. You may configure this parameter so that the drive continues to run, however, precautions should be taken to verify that the setting of this parameter does not create a risk of injury or equipment damage. When commissioning the drive, verify that your system responds correctly to various situations (for example, a disconnected cable).</p>	
37	<p><b>[Flt Cfg Logic]</b></p> <p>Sets the Logic Command data that is sent to the drive if any of the following is true:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <i>Host Parameter 33 - [Comm Flt Action]</i> is set to “4” (Send Flt Cfg) and I/O communication is disrupted.</li> <li>• <i>Host Parameter 34 - [Idle Flt Action]</i> is set to “4” (Send Flt Cfg) and the controller is idle.</li> <li>• <i>Host Parameter 35 - [Peer Flt Action]</i> is set to “4” (Send Flt Cfg) and peer I/O communication is disrupted.</li> <li>• <i>Host Parameter 36 - [Msg Flt Action]</i> is set to “4” (Send Flt Cfg) and explicit messaging for drive control is disrupted.</li> </ul> <p><b>Important:</b> The bit definitions in the Logic Command word for PowerFlex 750-Series drives are shown in <a href="#">Appendix D</a>.</p>	<p>Default: 0000 0000 0000 0000</p> <p>Minimum: 0000 0000 0000 0000</p> <p>Maximum: 0000 0000 0000 0000 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111 1111</p> <p>Type: Read/Write</p> <p>Reset Required: No</p>

Parameter		
No.	Name and Description	Details
38	<b>[Flt Cfg Ref]</b> Sets the Reference data that is sent to the drive if any of the following is true: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Host Parameter 33 - [Comm Flt Action]</b> is set to "4" (Send Flt Cfg) and I/O communication is disrupted.</li> <li>• <b>Host Parameter 34 - [Idle Flt Action]</b> is set to "4" (Send Flt Cfg) and the controller is idle.</li> <li>• <b>Host Parameter 35 - [Peer Flt Action]</b> is set to "4" (Send Flt Cfg) and peer I/O communication is disrupted.</li> <li>• <b>Host Parameter 36 - [Msg Flt Action]</b> is set to "4" (Send Flt Cfg) and explicit messaging for drive control is disrupted.</li> </ul>	Default: 0 Minimum: $-3.40282 \times 10^{38}$ Maximum: $3.40282 \times 10^{38}$ Type: Read/Write Reset Required: No
39	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 01]</b>	Default: 0
40	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 02]</b>	Default: 0
41	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 03]</b>	Default: 0
42	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 04]</b>	Default: 0
43	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 05]</b>	Default: 0
44	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 06]</b>	Default: 0
45	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 07]</b>	Default: 0
46	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 08]</b>	Default: 0
47	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 09]</b>	Default: 0
48	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 10]</b>	Default: 0
49	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 11]</b>	Default: 0
50	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 12]</b>	Default: 0
51	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 13]</b>	Default: 0
52	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 14]</b>	Default: 0
53	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 15]</b>	Default: 0
54	<b>[Flt Cfg DL 16]</b> Sets the data that is sent to the Datalink in the drive if any of the following is true: <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• <b>Host Parameter 33 - [Comm Flt Action]</b> is set to "4" (Send Flt Cfg) and I/O communication is disrupted.</li> <li>• <b>Host Parameter 34 - [Idle Flt Action]</b> is set to "4" (Send Flt Cfg) and the controller is idle.</li> <li>• <b>Host Parameter 35 - [Peer Flt Action]</b> is set to "4" (Send Flt Cfg) and peer I/O communication is disrupted.</li> <li>• <b>Host Parameter 36 - [Msg Flt Action]</b> is set to "4" (Send Flt Cfg) and explicit messaging for drive control is disrupted.</li> </ul>	Default: 0 Minimum: 0 Maximum: 4294967295 Type: Read/Write Reset Required: No


## Parameters for Tap Mode Operation

This section contains a list of *Device* parameters available when the option module is operated in Tap mode.

### Device Parameters—Tap Mode

Parameter		
No.	Name and Description	Details
01	<b>[Operating Mode]</b> Displays the option module's operating mode set with the Operating Mode Jumper J4 ( <a href="#">Figure 1 on page 19</a> ).	Values: 0 = Adapter 1 = Tap Type: Read Only
02	<b>[Port Number]</b> Displays the drive port into which the option module is installed. Typically, this is Port 4, 5 or 6.	Minimum: 4 Maximum: 6 Type: Read Only
03	<b>[Reserved]</b>	
04	<b>[Reserved]</b>	
05	<b>[Net Addr Sel]</b> Selects the source from which the option module's node address is taken when the Node Address switches ( <a href="#">Figure 2 on page 21</a> ) are not being used (that is, switches set to any value other than 001...254 or 888).	Default: 3 = DHCP Values: 1 = Parameters 2 = BOOTP 3 = DHCP Type: Read/Write Reset Required: Yes
06	<b>[Net Addr Src]</b> Displays the source from which the option module's node address is taken.	Values: 0 = Switches 1 = Parameters 2 = BOOTP 3 = DHCP Type: Read Only
07	<b>[IP Addr Cfg 1]</b> <b>[IP Addr Cfg 2]</b> <b>[IP Addr Cfg 3]</b> <b>[IP Addr Cfg 4]</b> Sets the IP address bytes for the option module's network address when <i>Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]</i> is set to "1" (Parameters) and the Node Address switches ( <a href="#">Figure 2 on page 21</a> ) are not being used (that is, switches set to any value other than 001...254 or 888). <div style="text-align: center;">             255 . 255 . 255 . 255                                                     [IP Addr Cfg 1]                                                                                     [IP Addr Cfg 2]                                                                                     [IP Addr Cfg 3]                                                                                     [IP Addr Cfg 4]           </div>	Default: 0
08		Default: 0
09		Default: 0
10		Default: 0
		Minimum: 0 Maximum: 255 Type: Read/Write Reset Required: Yes

Parameter		
No.	Name and Description	Details
11	<b>[Subnet Cfg 1]</b> <b>[Subnet Cfg 2]</b> <b>[Subnet Cfg 3]</b> <b>[Subnet Cfg 4]</b> Sets the subnet mask bytes for the option module's network address when <b>Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]</b> is set to "1" (Parameters) and the Node Address switches ( <a href="#">Figure 2 on page 21</a> ) are not being used (that is, switches set to any value other than 001...254 or 888). <div style="text-align: center;">             255 . 255 . 255 . 255                                                        [Subnet Cfg 1]    [Subnet Cfg 2]    [Subnet Cfg 3]    [Subnet Cfg 4]           </div>	Default: 0
12		Default: 0
13		Default: 0
14		Default: 0
		Minimum: 0
		Maximum: 255
		Type: Read/Write
		Reset Required: Yes
15	<b>[Gateway Cfg 1]</b> <b>[Gateway Cfg 2]</b> <b>[Gateway Cfg 3]</b> <b>[Gateway Cfg 4]</b> Sets the gateway address bytes for the option module's network address when <b>Device Parameter 05 - [Net Addr Sel]</b> is set to "1" (Parameters) and the Node Address switches ( <a href="#">Figure 2 on page 21</a> ) are not being used (that is, switches set to any value other than 001...254 or 888). <div style="text-align: center;">             255 . 255 . 255 . 255                                                        [Gateway Cfg 1]    [Gateway Cfg 2]    [Gateway Cfg 3]    [Gateway Cfg 4]           </div>	Default: 0
16		Default: 0
17		Default: 0
18		Default: 0
		Minimum: 0
		Maximum: 255
		Type: Read/Write
		Reset Required: Yes
19	<b>[Net Rate Cfg 1]</b> Sets the speed and duplex network data rate at which the option module communicates on its ENET1 network port. (Updates <b>Device Parameter 20 - [Net Rate Act 1]</b> after a reset.)	Default: 0 = Autodetect Values: 0 = Autodetect 1 = 10 Mbps Full 2 = 10 Mbps Half 3 = 100 Mbps Full 4 = 100 Mbps Half 5 = Disabled Type: Read/Write Reset Required: Yes
20	<b>[Net Rate Act 1]</b> Displays the actual speed and duplex network data rate for the option module's ENET1 network port.	Values: 0 = No Link 1 = 10 Mbps Full 2 = 10 Mbps Half 3 = 100 Mbps Full 4 = 100 Mbps Half 5 = Dup IP Addr Type: Read Only
21	<b>[Net Rate Cfg 2]</b> Sets the speed and duplex network data rate at which the option module communicates on its ENET2 network port. (Updates <b>Device Parameter 22 - [Net Rate Act 2]</b> after a reset.)	Default: 0 = Autodetect Values: 0 = Autodetect 1 = 10 Mbps Full 2 = 10 Mbps Half 3 = 100 Mbps Full 4 = 100 Mbps Half 5 = Disabled Type: Read/Write Reset Required: Yes

Parameter		
No.	Name and Description	Details
22	<b>[Net Rate Act 2]</b> Displays the actual speed and duplex network data rate for the option module's ENET2 network port.	Values: 0 = No Link 1 = 10 Mbps Full 2 = 10 Mbps Half 3 = 100 Mbps Full 4 = 100 Mbps Half 5 = Dup IP Addr Type: Read Only
23	<b>[Net Rate Cfg 3]</b> Sets the speed and duplex network data rate at which the option module communicates on its ENET3 (DEVICE) port. (Updates <i>Device Parameter 24 - [Net Rate Act 3]</i> after a reset.)	Default: 0 = Autodetect Values: 0 = Autodetect 1 = 10 Mbps Full 2 = 10 Mbps Half 3 = 100 Mbps Full 4 = 100 Mbps Half 5 = Disabled Type: Read/Write Reset Required: Yes
24	<b>[Net Rate Act 3]</b> Displays the actual speed and duplex network data rate for the option module's ENET3 (DEVICE) port.	Values: 0 = No Link 1 = 10 Mbps Full 2 = 10 Mbps Half 3 = 100 Mbps Full 4 = 100 Mbps Half 5 = Dup IP Addr Type: Read Only
25	<b>[Reset Module]</b> No action if set to "0" (Ready). Resets the option module if set to "1" (Reset Module). Restores the option module to its factory default settings if set to "2" (Set Defaults). This parameter is a command. It will be reset to "0" (Ready) after the command has been performed.  When performing a Set Defaults, the drive may detect a conflict. If this occurs, the drive will not allow a Set Defaults action. You must resolve the conflict before attempting a Set Defaults action for the option module.	Default: 0 = Ready Values: 0 = Ready 1 = Reset Module 2 = Set Defaults Type: Read/Write Reset Required: No
<div style="display: flex; align-items: center;">  <p><b>ATTENTION:</b> Risk of injury or equipment damage exists. If the option module is transmitting I/O that controls the drive, the drive may fault when you reset the option module. Determine how your drive will respond before resetting the option module.</p> </div>		
26	<b>[Web Enable]</b> Enables/disables the option module's web pages.	Default: 0 = Disabled Values: 0 = Disabled 1 = Enabled Type: Read/Write Reset Required: No

## Host Parameters—Tap Mode

When operating the option module in Tap mode, *Host* parameters are NOT supported.



## EtherNet/IP Objects (Adapter mode only)

This appendix presents information about the EtherNet/IP objects that can be accessed using Explicit Messages. For information on the format of Explicit Messages and example ladder logic programs, see [Chapter 6](#), Using Explicit Messaging (Adapter mode only).

Object	Class Code		Page
	Hex.	Dec.	
<a href="#">Identity Object</a>	0x01	1	154
<a href="#">Assembly Object</a>	0x04	4	155
<a href="#">Register Object</a>	0x07	7	156
<a href="#">PCCC Object</a>	0x67	103	157
<a href="#">DPI Device Object</a>	0x92	146	160
<a href="#">DPI Parameter Object</a>	0x93	147	163
<a href="#">DPI Fault Object</a>	0x97	151	169

Object	Class Code		Page
	Hex.	Dec.	
<a href="#">DPI Alarm Object</a>	0x98	152	171
<a href="#">DPI Diagnostic Object</a>	0x99	153	173
<a href="#">DPI Time Object</a>	0x9B	155	175
<a href="#">Host DPI Parameter Object</a>	0x9F	159	177
<a href="#">TCP/IP Interface Object</a>	0xF5	245	183
<a href="#">Ethernet Link Object</a>	0xF6	246	185

### TIP

See the EtherNet/IP specification for more information about EtherNet/IP objects. Information about the EtherNet/IP specification is available on the ODVA website (<http://www.odva.org>).

## Supported Data Types

Data Type	Description
BOOL	8-bit value -- low bit is true or false
BOOL[x]	Array of n bits
CONTAINER	32-bit parameter value - sign extended if necessary
DINT	32-bit signed integer
INT	16-bit signed integer
LWORD	64-bit unsigned integer
REAL	32-bit floating point
SHORT_STRING	Struct of: USINT length indicator (L); USINT[L] characters
SINT	8-bit signed integer
STRINGN	Struct of: UINT character length indicator (W); USINT length indicator (L); USINT[W x L] string data
STRING[x]	Array of n characters
STRUCT	Structure name only - no size in addition to elements
TCHAR	8 or 16-bit character
UDINT	32-bit unsigned integer
UINT	16-bit unsigned integer
USINT	8-bit unsigned integer

## Identity Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x01	1

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x05	No	Yes	Reset
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x01	Yes	Yes	Get_Attributes_All

### Instances

The number of instances depends on the number of components in the device connected to the option module. This number of components can be read in Instance 0, Attribute 2.

Instance	Description
0	Class
1	Host
2...15	Peripherals on Ports 1...14

### Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
2	Get	Max Instance	UINT	Total number of instances

### Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Vendor ID	UINT	1 = Allen-Bradley
2	Get	Device Type	UINT	142
3	Get	Product Code	UINT	Number identifying product name and rating
4	Get	Revision: Major Minor	STRUCT of: USINT USINT	Value varies Value varies
5	Get	Status	UINT	Bit 0 = Owned Bit 8 = Minor recoverable fault Bit 10 = Major recoverable fault
6	Get	Serial Number	UDINT	Unique 32-bit number
7	Get	Product Name	SHORT_STRING	Product name and rating

## Assembly Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x04	4

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x10	Yes	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

### Instances

Instance	Description
1	All I/O data being read from the DPI device (read-only)
2	All I/O data written to the DPI device (read/write)

### Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT	2
2	Get	Max Instance	UINT	2
100	Set	Control Timeout	UINT	Control timeout in seconds

### Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Number of Members	UINT	1
2	Get	Member List	ARRAY of STRUCT: UINT UINT Packed EPATH	Size of member data Size of member path Member path
3	Conditional <sup>(1)</sup>	Data	Array of Bits	Data to be transferred
4	Get	Size	UINT	Size of assembly data in bits

(1) For instance 1, access rule for the data attribute is Get. For instance 2, it is Get/Set.

---

**IMPORTANT** Setting an assembly object attribute can be done only when the Control Timeout (class attribute 100) has been set to a non-zero value.

---

## Register Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x07	7

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x10	Yes	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

### Instances

Instance	Description
1	All I/O data being read from the option module (read-only)
2	All I/O data written to the option module (read/write)
3	Logic Status and Feedback data (read-only)
4	Logic Command and Reference data (read/write)
5	DL To Net 01 (input data from option module to scanner) (read only)
6	DL From Net 01 (output data from scanner to option module) (read/write)
⋮	⋮
35	DL To Net 16 (input data from option module to scanner) (read only)
36	DL From Net 16 (output data from scanner to option module) (read/write)
37	Logic Status and Feedback data (read-only)
38	Masked Logic Command <sup>(1)</sup> (read/write)
39	Logic Status data (read-only)
40	Logic Command data (read/write)
41	Feedback data (read-only)
42	Reference data (read/write)

(1) The mask command DWORD is set to the value of the first DWORD of the data where there are ones in the second DWORD of the data. Only the bits of the Logic Command that have the corresponding mask bit set are applied.

### Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Description
1	Read	Revision
2	Read	Maximum Instance
3	Read	Number of Instances
100	Read/Write	Timeout

### Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Bad Flag	BOOL	If set to 1, then attribute 4 may contain invalid data. 0 = good 1 = bad
2	Get	Direction	BOOL	Direction of data transfer 0 = Producer Register (drive to network) 1 = Consumer Register (network to drive)
3	Get	Size	UINT	Size of register data in bits
4	Conditional <sup>(1)</sup>	Data	ARRAY of BITS	Data to be transferred

(1) For this attribute, the Access Rule is Get if Direction = 0. The Access Rule is Set if Direction = 1.

## PCCC Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x67	103

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x4B	No	Yes	Execute_PCCC
0x4C	No	Yes	Execute_DH+

### Instances

Supports Instance 1.

### Class Attributes

Not supported.

### Instance Attributes

Not supported.

### Message Structure for Execute\_PCCC

Request		
Name	Data Type	Description
Length	USINT	Length of requestor ID
Vendor	UINT	Vendor number of requestor
Serial Number	UDINT	ASA serial number of requestor
Other	Product Specific	Identifier of user, task, etc. on the requestor
CMD	USINT	Command byte
STS	USINT	0
TNSW	UINT	Transport word
FNC	USINT	Function code. Not used for all CMDs.
PCCC_params	ARRAY of USINT	CMD/FNC specific parameters

Response		
Name	Data Type	Description
Length	USINT	Length of requestor ID
Vendor	UINT	Vendor number of requestor
Serial Number	UDINT	ASA serial number of requestor
Other	Product Specific	Identifier of user, task, etc. on the requestor
CMD	USINT	Command byte
STS	USINT	Status byte
TNSW	UINT	Transport word. Same value as the request.
EXT_STS	USINT	Extended status. Not used for all CMDs.
PCCC_results	ARRAY of USINT	CMD/FNC specific result data

## Message Structure for Execute\_DH+

Request		
Name	Data Type	Description
DLink	UINT	Destination Link ID
DSta	USINT	Destination Station number
DUser	USINT	Destination "User" number
SLink	UINT	Source Link ID
SSta	USINT	Source Station number
SUser	USINT	Source User number
CMD	USINT	Command byte
STS	USINT	0
TNSW	UINT	Transport word
FNC	USINT	Function code; not used for all CMDs
PCCC_params	ARRAY of USINT	CMD/FNC specific parameters

Response		
Name	Data Type	Description
DLink	UINT	Destination Link ID
DSta	USINT	Destination Station number
DUser	USINT	Destination "User" number
SLink	UINT	Source Link ID
SSta	USINT	Source Station number
SUser	USINT	Source User number
CMD	USINT	Command byte
STS	USINT	Status byte
TNSW	UINT	Transport word. Same value as the request.
EXT_STS	USINT	Extended Status; not used for all CMDs
PCCC_results	ARRAY of USINT	CMD/FNC specific result data

The EtherNet/IP option module supports the following PCCC command types:

CMD	FNC	Description
0x06	0x03	Identify host and some status
0x0F	0x67	PLC-5 typed write
0x0F	0x68	PLC-5 typed read
0x0F	0x95	Encapsulate other protocol
0x0F	0xA2	SLC 500 protected typed read with 3 address fields
0x0F	0xAA	SLC 500 protected typed write with 3 address fields
0x0F	0xA1	SLC 500 protected typed read with 2 address fields
0x0F	0xA9	SLC 500 protected typed write with 2 address fields
0x0F	0x00	Word range read
0x0F	0x01	Word range write

For more information regarding PCCC commands, see DF1 Protocol and Command Set Reference Manual, publication [1770-6.5.16](#)).

**N-Files**

<b>N-File</b>	<b>Description</b>	
N42	This N-file lets you read and write some values configuring the port.	
N42:3	Time-out (read/write): Time (in seconds) allowed between messages to the N45 file. If the option module does not receive a message in the specified time, it performs the fault action configured in its [Comm Flt Action] parameter. A valid setting is between 1 and 32767 seconds (5...20 seconds is recommended).	
N42:7	Option module Port Number (read only): Drive port in which option module resides.	
N42:8	Peer Option Modules (read only): Bit field of devices with peer messaging capabilities.	
N45	<p>This N-file lets you read and write control I/O messages. You can write control I/O messages only when all of the following conditions are true:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>• The option module is not receiving I/O from a scanner. For example, there is no scanner on the network, the scanner is in idle (program) mode, the scanner is faulted, or the option module is not mapped to the scanner.</li> <li>• The option module is not receiving Peer I/O from another option module.</li> <li>• The value of N42:3 is set to a non-zero value.</li> </ul>	
	<i>Write</i>	<i>Read</i>
N45:0	Logic Command (least significant)	Logic Status (least significant)
N45:1	Logic Command (most significant)	Logic Status (most significant)
N45:2	Reference (least significant)	Feedback (least significant)
N45:3	Reference (most significant)	Feedback (most significant)
N45:4	DL From Net 01 (least significant)	DL To Net 01 (least significant)
N45:5	DL From Net 01 (most significant)	DL To Net 01 (most significant)
N45:6	DL From Net 02 (least significant)	DL To Net 02 (least significant)
N45:7	DL From Net 02 (most significant)	DL To Net 02 (most significant)
N45:8	DL From Net 03 (least significant)	DL To Net 03 (least significant)
N45:9	DL From Net 03 (most significant)	DL To Net 03 (most significant)
N45:10	DL From Net 04 (least significant)	DL To Net 04 (least significant)
N45:11	DL From Net 04 (most significant)	DL To Net 04 (most significant)
N45:12	DL From Net 05 (least significant)	DL To Net 05 (least significant)
N45:13	DL From Net 05 (most significant)	DL To Net 05 (most significant)
N45:14	DL From Net 06 (least significant)	DL To Net 06 (least significant)
N45:15	DL From Net 06 (most significant)	DL To Net 06 (most significant)
N45:16	DL From Net 07 (least significant)	DL To Net 07 (least significant)
N45:17	DL From Net 07 (most significant)	DL To Net 07 (most significant)
N45:18	DL From Net 08 (least significant)	DL To Net 08 (least significant)
N45:19	DL From Net 08 (most significant)	DL To Net 08 (most significant)
N45:20	DL From Net 09 (least significant)	DL To Net 09 (least significant)
N45:21	DL From Net 09 (most significant)	DL To Net 09 (most significant)
N45:22	DL From Net 10 (least significant)	DL To Net 10 (least significant)
N45:23	DL From Net 10 (most significant)	DL To Net 10 (most significant)
N45:24	DL From Net 11 (least significant)	DL To Net 11 (least significant)
N45:25	DL From Net 11 (most significant)	DL To Net 11 (most significant)
N45:26	DL From Net 12 (least significant)	DL To Net 12 (least significant)
N45:27	DL From Net 12 (most significant)	DL To Net 12 (most significant)
N45:28	DL From Net 13 (least significant)	DL To Net 13 (least significant)
N45:29	DL From Net 13 (most significant)	DL To Net 13 (most significant)
N45:30	DL From Net 14 (least significant)	DL To Net 14 (least significant)
N45:31	DL From Net 14 (most significant)	DL To Net 14 (most significant)
N45:32	DL From Net 15 (least significant)	DL To Net 15 (least significant)
N45:33	DL From Net 15 (most significant)	DL To Net 15 (most significant)
N45:34	DL From Net 16 (least significant)	DL To Net 16 (least significant)
N45:35	DL From Net 16 (most significant)	DL To Net 16 (most significant)

## DPI Device Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x92	146

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x10	Yes	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

### Instances

The number of instances depends on the number of components in the device. The total number of components can be read in Instance 0, Class Attribute 4.

Instances		Device
(Hex.)	(Dec.)	
0x0000...0x3FFF	0...16383	Host Drive
0x4000...0x43FF	16384...17407	Option Module
0x4400...0x47FF	17408...18431	Port 1
0x4800...0x4BFF	18432...19455	Port 2
0x4C00...0x4FFF	19456...20479	Port 3
0x5000...0x53FF	20480...21503	Port 4
0x5400...0x57FF	21504...22527	Port 5
0x5800...0x5BFF	22528...23551	Port 6
0x5C00...0x5FFF	23552...24575	Port 7
0x6000...0x63FF	24576...25599	Port 8
0x6400...0x67FF	25600...26623	Port 9
0x6800...0x6BFF	26624...27647	Port 10
0x6C00...0x6FFF	27648...28671	Port 11
0x7000...0x73FF	28672...29695	Port 12
0x7400...0x77FF	29696...30719	Port 13
0x7800...0x7BFF	30720...31743	Port 14

Example	Description
0	Class Attributes (Drive)
1	Drive Component 1
2	Drive Component 2
⋮	⋮
16384	Class Attributes (Option Module)
16385	Option Module Component 1
⋮	⋮



## Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
0	Get	Family Code	USINT	0x00 = DPI Peripheral 0x90 = PowerFlex 750-Series Drive 0xA0 = 20-750-xxxx Option Module 0xFF = HIM
1	Get	Family Text	STRING[16]	Text identifying the device.
2	Set	Language Code	USINT	0 = English 1 = French 2 = Spanish 3 = Italian 4 = German 5 = Japanese 6 = Portuguese 7 = Mandarin Chinese 8 = Russian 9 = Dutch 10 = Korean
3	Get	Product Series	USINT	1 = A 2 = B ...
4	Get	Number of Components	USINT	Number of components (for example, main control board, I/O boards) in the device.
5	Set	User Definable Text	STRING[16]	Text identifying the device with a user-supplied name.
6	Get	Status Text	STRING[12]	Text describing the status of the device.
7	Get	Configuration Code	USINT	Identification of variations.
8	Get	Configuration Text	STRING[16]	Text identifying a variation of a family device.
9	Get	Brand Code	UINT	0x0001 = Allen-Bradley
11	Get	NVS Checksum	UINT	Checksum of the Nonvolatile Storage in a device.
12	Get	Class Revision	UINT	2 = DPI
13	Get	Character Set Code	USINT	0 = SCANport HIM 1 = ISO 8859-1 (Latin 1) 2 = ISO 8859-2 (Latin 2) 3 = ISO 8859-3 (Latin 3) 4 = ISO 8859-4 (Latin 4) 5 = ISO 8859-5 (Cyrillic) 6 = ISO 8859-6 (Arabic) 7 = ISO 8859-7 (Greek) 8 = ISO 8859-8 (Hebrew) 9 = ISO 8859-9 (Turkish) 10 = ISO 8859-10 (Nordic) 255 = ISO 10646 (Unicode)
14	Get	Product Option Support	BOOL[64]	
15	Get	Languages Supported	STRUCT of: USINT USINT[n]	Number of Languages Language Codes (see Class Attribute 2)
16	Get	Date of Manufacture	STRUCT of: UINT USINT USINT	Year Month Day
17	Get	Product Revision	STRUCT of: USINT USINT	Major Firmware Release Minor Firmware Release
18	Get	Serial Number	UDINT	Value between 0x00000000 and 0xFFFFFFFF
19	Set	Language Selected	USINT	0 = Default (HIM will prompt at startup) 1 = Language was selected (no prompt)

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
20	Set	Customer-Generated Firmware	STRING[36]	GUID (Globally Unique Identifier) identifying customer firmware upgraded into the device.
30	Get	International Status Text	STRINGN	Text describing the status of device with support for Unicode.
31	Get/Set	International User Definable Text	STRINGN	Text identifying the device with a user-supplied name with support for Unicode.
34	Get	Key Information	STRUCT of: UDINT UDINT UINT UINT UINT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT[16]	Rating Code Device Serial Number Customization Code Customization Revision Brand Code Family Code Config Code Language Code Major Revision Minor Revision Customer-Generated Firmware UUID
35	Get	NVS CRC	UDINT	A 32-bit CRC of the Nonvolatile Storage in a device.
38	Set	ADC Configuration Signature	USINT[16]	Value stored by the device and zeroed if its configuration changes.
39	Get	SI Driver Code	UINT	Code identifying the protocol between the device and host.
128	Get	Customization Code	UINT	Code identifying the customized device.
129	Get	Customization Revision Number	UINT	Revision of the customized device.
130	Get	Customization Device Text	STRING[32]	Text identifying the customized device.

## Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
3	Get	Component Name	STRING[32]	Name of the component
4	Get	Component Firmware Revision	STRUCT of: USINT USINT	Major Revision Minor Revision
8	Get	Component Serial Number	UDINT	Value between 0x00000000 and 0xFFFFFFFF
9	Get	International Component Name	STRINGN	Name of the component with support for Unicode.

## DPI Parameter Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x93	147

To access “Host Config” parameters, use the Host DPI Parameter Object (Class Code 0x9F).

### Instances

The number of instances depends on the number of parameters in the device. The total number of parameters can be read in Instance 0, Attribute 0.

Instances		Device	Example	Description
(Hex.)	(Dec.)			
0x0000...0x3FFF	0...16383	Host Drive	0	Class Attributes (Drive)
0x4000...0x43FF	16384...17407	Option Module	1	Drive Parameter 1 Attributes
0x4400...0x47FF	17408...18431	Port 1	2	Drive Parameter 2 Attributes
0x4800...0x4BFF	18432...19455	Port 2	⋮	⋮
0x4C00...0x4FFF	19456...20479	Port 3	16384	Class Attributes (Option Module)
0x5000...0x53FF	20480...21503	Port 4	16385	Option Module Parameter 1 Attributes
0x5400...0x57FF	21504...22527	Port 5	⋮	⋮
0x5800...0x5BFF	22528...23551	Port 6		
0x5C00...0x5FFF	23552...24575	Port 7		
0x6000...0x63FF	24576...25599	Port 8		
0x6400...0x67FF	25600...26623	Port 9		
0x6800...0x6BFF	26624...27647	Port 10		
0x6C00...0x6FFF	27648...28671	Port 11		
0x7000...0x73FF	28672...29695	Port 12		
0x7400...0x77FF	29696...30719	Port 13		
0x7800...0x7BFF	30720...31743	Port 14		

### Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
0	Get	Number of Instances	UINT	Number of parameters in the device
1	Set	Write Protect Password	UINT	0 = Password disabled n = Password value
2	Set	NVS Command Write	USINT	0 = No Operation 1 = Store values in active memory to NVS 2 = Load values in NVS to active memory 3 = Load default values to active memory 4 = Partial defaults 5 = System defaults
3	Get	NVS Parameter Value Checksum	UINT	Checksum of all parameter values in a user set in NVS
4	Get	NVS Link Value Checksum	UINT	Checksum of parameter links in a user set in NVS
5	Get	First Accessible Parameter	UINT	First parameter available if parameters are protected by passwords. A “0” indicates all parameters are protected.
7	Get	Class Revision	UINT	2 = DPI
8	Get	First Parameter Processing Error	UINT	The first parameter that has been written with a value outside of its range. A “0” indicates no errors.
9	Set	Link Command	USINT	0 = No Operation 1 = Clear All Parameter Links (This does not clear links to function blocks.)

## Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
6	Get	DPI Offline Read Full	STRUCT of: BOOL[32] CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER STRING[16] STRING[4] UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT USINT USINT UINT CONTAINER UINT UNIT UNIT INT	Descriptor Offline Minimum value Offline Maximum value Offline Default value Parameter name Offline parameter units Online minimum parameter instance Online maximum parameter instance Online default parameter instance Multiplier parameter instance Divisor parameter instance Base parameter instance Offset parameter instance Formula number Pad byte (always zero) Help instance Pad word (always a value of zero) Parameter value Multiplier Divisor Base Offset
7	Get	DPI Online Read Full	STRUCT of: BOOL[32] CONTAINER <sup>(1)</sup> CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER UINT UINT STRING[4] UINT UINT UINT INT USINT[3] USINT STRING[16]	Descriptor (see <a href="#">page 166</a> ) Parameter value Minimum value Maximum value Default value Next parameter Previous parameter Units (for example, Amps, Hz) Multiplier <sup>(2)</sup> Divisor <sup>(2)</sup> Base <sup>(2)</sup> Offset <sup>(2)</sup> Link (source of the value) (0 = no link) Always zero (0) Parameter name
8	Get	DPI Descriptor	BOOL[32]	Descriptor (see <a href="#">page 166</a> )
9	Get/Set	DPI Parameter Value	Various	Parameter value in NVS. <sup>(3)</sup>
10	Get/Set	DPI RAM Parameter Value	Various	Parameter value in temporary memory. Valid only for DPI drives.
11	Get/Set	DPI Link	USINT[3]	Link (parameter or function block that is the source of the value) (0 = no link)
12	Get	Help Object Instance	UINT	ID for help text for this parameter
13	Get	DPI Read Basic	STRUCT of: BOOL[32] CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER STRING[16] STRING[4]	Descriptor (see <a href="#">page 166</a> ) Parameter value Minimum value Maximum value Default value Parameter name Units (for example, Amps, Hz)
14	Get	DPI Parameter Name	STRING[16]	Parameter name
15	Get	DPI Parameter Alias	STRING[16]	Customer-supplied parameter name.

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
16	Get	Parameter Processing Error	USINT	0 = No error 1 = Value is less than the minimum 2 = Value is greater than the maximum
18	Get	International DPI Offline Parameter Text	Struct of: STRINGN STRINGN	International parameter name International offline units
19	Get	International DPI Online Parameter Text	Struct of: STRINGN STRINGN	International parameter name International online units
20	Get	International DPI Online Read Full	Struct of: BOOL[32] CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT INT USINT[3] USINT BOOL[32] STRINGN STRINGN	Descriptor Parameter value Online minimum value Online maximum value Online default value Next Previous Multiplier Divisor Base Offset Link Pad word (always zero) Extended descriptor International parameter name International online parameter units
21	Get	DPI Extended Descriptor	UDINT	Extended Descriptor (see <a href="#">page 167</a> )
22	Get	International DPI Offline Read Full	Struct of: BOOL CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT USINT USINT UINT UINT CONTAINER UINT UINT UINT INT BOOL[32] STRINGN STRINGN	Descriptor Offline minimum value Offline maximum value Offline default value Online minimum parameter instance Online maximum parameter instance Online default parameter instance Multiplier parameter instance Divisor parameter instance Base parameter instance Offset parameter instance Formula number Pad word (always zero) Help instance Pad word (always a value of zero) Parameter value Multiplier Divisor Base Offset Extended DPI descriptor International DPI parameter name International DPI offline parameter units

- (1) A CONTAINER is a 32-bit block of data that contains the data type used by a parameter value. If signed, the value is sign extended. Padding is used in the CONTAINER to be sure that it is always 32-bits.
- (2) This value is used in the formulas used to convert the parameter value between display units and internal units. See [Formulas for Converting on page 168](#).
- (3) Do NOT continually write parameter data to NVS. See the attention on [page 99](#).

## Descriptor Attributes

Bit	Name	Description
0	Data Type (Bit 1)	Right bit is least significant bit (0).
1	Data Type (Bit 2)	000 = USINT used as an array of Boolean
2	Data Type (Bit 3)	001 = UINT used as an array of Boolean 010 = USINT (8-bit integer) 011 = UINT (16-bit integer) 100 = UDINT (32-bit integer) 101 = TCHAR ((8-bit (not Unicode) or 16-bits (Unicode)) 110 = REAL (32-bit floating point value) 111 = Use bits 16, 17, 18
3	Sign Type	0 = unsigned 1 = signed
4	Hidden	0 = visible 1 = hidden
5	Not a Link Sink	0 = May be the sink end of a link 1 = May not be the sink end of a link
6	Not Recallable	0 = Recallable from NVS 1 = Not Recallable from NVS
7	ENUM	0 = No ENUM text 1 = ENUM text
8	Writable	0 = Read only 1 = Read/write
9	Not Writable When Enabled	0 = Writable when enabled (for example, drive running) 1 = Not writable when enabled
10	Instance	0 = Parameter value is not a Reference to another parameter 1 = Parameter value refers to another parameter
11	Uses Bit ENUM Mask	This parameter instance supports the Bit ENUM Mask attribute. For more information, see the definition of the attribute.
12	Decimal Place (Bit 0)	Number of digits to the right of the decimal point.
13	Decimal Place (Bit 1)	0000 = 0
14	Decimal Place (Bit 2)	1111 = 15
15	Decimal Place (Bit 3)	
16	Extended Data Type (Bit 4)	Bit 16 is the least significant bit.
17	Extended Data Type (Bit 5)	000 = Reserved
18	Extended Data Type (Bit 6)	001 = UDINT used as an array of Boolean 010 = Reserved 011 = Reserved 100 = Reserved 101 = Reserved 110 = Reserved 111 = Reserved
19	Parameter Exists	Used to mark parameters that are not available to network tools.
20	Not Used	Reserved
21	Formula Links	Indicates the Formula Data is derived from other parameters.
22	Access Level (Bit 1)	A 3-bit field used to control access to parameter data.
23	Access Level (Bit 2)	
24	Access Level (Bit 3)	
25	Writable ENUM	ENUM text: 0 = Read Only, 1 = Read/Write
26	Not a Link Source	0 = May be the source end of a link 1 = May not be the source end of a link
27	Enhanced Bit ENUM	Parameter supports enhanced bit ENUMs.
28	Enhanced ENUM	Parameter supports enhanced ENUMs.
29	Uses DPI Limits Object	Parameter uses the DPI Limits Object. Intelligent offline tools make use of the Limits Object to select limits and units.
30	Extended Descriptor	Parameter uses Extended Descriptor bits, which can be obtained by reading the DPI Extended Descriptor attribute for this parameter.
31	Always Upload/Download	Parameter shall always be included in uploads and downloads.

## Extended Descriptor Attributes

Bit	Name	Description
0	Indirect Mode	0 = Analog (selects entire parameters) 1 = Digital (selects individual bits within parameters)
1	Indirect Type 0	Analog input list (Instance 0xFFFF)
2	Indirect Type 1	Digital input list (Instance 0xFFFE)
3	Indirect Type 2	Feedback list (Instance 0xFFFD)
4	Indirect Type 3	Analog output list (Instance 0xFFFC)
5	Indirect Type 4	Digital output list (Instance 0xFFFB)
6	Indirect Type 5	Undefined (Instance 0xFFFA)
7	Indirect Type 6	Undefined (Instance 0xFFFF9)
8	Indirect Type 7	Undefined (Instance 0xFFFF8)
9	Indirect Type 8	Undefined (Instance 0xFFFF7)
10	Indirect Type 9	Undefined (Instance 0xFFFF6)
11	Indirect Type 10	Undefined (Instance 0xFFFF5)
12	Indirect Type 11	Undefined (Instance 0xFFFF4)
13	Indirect Type 12	Undefined (Instance 0xFFFF3)
14	Indirect Type 13	Undefined (Instance 0xFFFF2)
15	Indirect Type 14	Parameter-specific list
16	FP Max Decimals Bit 0	These four bits are used on REAL parameters only. They indicate the maximum number of decimal places to be displayed for small values. A value of 0 indicates to not limit the number of decimal places used.
17	FP Max Decimals Bit 1	
18	FP Max Decimals Bit 2	
19	FP Max Decimals Bit 1	
20	Extended Parameter Reference	0 = Not an Extended Parameter Reference 1 = Extended Parameter Reference  An Extended Parameter Reference contains a reference to another parameter. The value is formatted the same as an analog mode Indirect Selector parameter (SSpppp, where SS = slot number of device to which this Extended Parameter Reference is pointing, and pppp = number of the parameter or diagnostic item to which this Extended Parameter Reference is pointing). Note that an Extended Parameter Reference can only select parameters unlike an Indirect Selector. An Extended Parameter Reference could be used to configure a Datalink or show the source of a Reference (among other uses).
21	Uses Rating Table Object	This parameter has rating-dependent defaults and limits that can be obtained from the Rating Table Object. The Offline Read Full will include the default value for the smallest rating and limits that will accommodate the full range of values allowed in the family of devices using this particular combination of Family Code and Config Code. The Online Read Full will include the rating-dependent default and limit values for this particular combination of Family Code, Config Code, and Rating Code.
22	Writable Referenced Parameter	This bit must be zero unless the parameter is an Extended Parameter Reference. If the parameter is an Extended Parameter Reference, then: 0 = The referenced parameter may be read-only or writable. 1 = The referenced parameter must always be writable (including while running).
23	Disallow Zero	This bit must be zero unless the parameter is an Indirect Selector or Extended Parameter Reference. If the parameter is an Indirect Selector or Extended Parameter Reference, then: 0 = Allow zero 1 = Disallow zero  If this bit is cleared (indicating that a value of zero is allowed), the device must support the "Zero Text" parameter attribute so that a software tool or HIM can obtain text from the Zero Text parameter attribute. If this bit is set (indicating that a value of zero is disallowed), a software tool or HIM will not allow the user to enter a value of zero.
24	Datalink Out	This bit is used by offline tools and indicates that this is a Datalink Out parameter. Bit 20 must also be set.
25	Datalink In	This bit is used by offline tools and indicates that this is a Datalink In parameter. Bits 20 and 22 must also be set.
26	Not Writable While IO Active	This parameter cannot be written if the I/O data being exchanged between the Host and the peripheral is valid.
27	Command Parameter	This parameter commands the drive to take an action, such as "Reset Defaults" or "Autotune," and then returns to a value of zero. Offline software tools will not allow setting this parameter to anything other than a value of zero. If an offline file contains a Command Parameter with a non-zero value, the offline software tool will change the value to zero. Note that command parameters cannot have values that do not return to zero.

Bit	Name	Description
28	Current Value Is Default	This bit identifies a parameter that will not change if a "Reset Defaults" is commanded. For example, if a drive contains a Language parameter that is set to German, setting defaults will leave the parameter set to German. Likewise, if the parameter is set to French, setting defaults will leave the parameter set to French.
29	Use Zero Text	If the "Disallow Zero" bit is set, this bit must be cleared. If the "Disallow Zero" bit is cleared, then: 0 = Use Disabled Text parameter class attribute. 1 = Use Zero Text parameter instance attribute.
30-31	Reserved	Reserved

## Formulas for Converting

Display Value = ((Internal Value + Offset) x Multiplier x Base) / (Divisor x 10<sup>Decimal Places</sup>)

Internal Value = ((Display Value x Divisor x 10<sup>Decimal Places</sup>) / (Multiplier x Base)) - Offset

## Common Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x10	Yes	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

## Object Specific Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name	Allocation Size (in bytes)	
	Class	Instance		Par. Number	Par. Value
0x4D	Yes	No	Get_Attributes_Scattered	4	4
0x4E	Yes	No	Set_Attributes_Scattered	4	4

The table below lists the parameters for the Get\_Attributes\_Scattered and Set\_Attributes\_Scattered object-specific service:

Name	Data Type	Description
Parameter Number	UDINT	Parameter to read or write
Parameter Value	UDINT	Parameter value write (zero when reading)

The response data appears in the following format:

Name	Data Type	Description
Parameter Number	UDINT	Parameter read or write <sup>(1)</sup>
Parameter Value	UDINT	Parameter value read (zero when writing) <sup>(2)</sup>

(1) If an error occurred, bit 15 will be turned on in the response.

(2) If an error occurred, the error code will appear instead of the value.



## DPI Fault Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x97	151

Products such as PowerFlex drives use this object for faults. Option Modules use this object for events.

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x10	Yes	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

### Instances

The number of instances depends on the maximum number of faults or events supported in the queue. The maximum number of faults/events can be read in Instance 0, Attribute 2.

Instances		Device
(Hex.)	(Dec.)	
0x0000...0x3FFF	0...16383	Host Drive
0x4000...0x43FF	16384...17407	Option Module
0x4400...0x47FF	17408...18431	Port 1
0x4800...0x4BFF	18432...19455	Port 2
0x4C00...0x4FFF	19456...20479	Port 3
0x5000...0x53FF	20480...21503	Port 4
0x5400...0x57FF	21504...22527	Port 5
0x5800...0x5BFF	22528...23551	Port 6
0x5C00...0x5FFF	23552...24575	Port 7
0x6000...0x63FF	24576...25599	Port 8
0x6400...0x67FF	25600...26623	Port 9
0x6800...0x6BFF	26624...27647	Port 10
0x6C00...0x6FFF	27648...28671	Port 11
0x7000...0x73FF	28672...29695	Port 12
0x7400...0x77FF	29696...30719	Port 13
0x7800...0x7BFF	30720...31743	Port 14

Example	Description
0	Class Attributes (Drive)
1	Most Recent Drive Fault
2	Second Most Recent Drive Fault
⋮	⋮
16384	Class Attributes (Option Module)
16385	Most Recent Option Module Event
⋮	⋮

## Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Class Revision	UINT	Revision of object
2	Get	Number of Instances	UINT	Maximum number of faults/events that the device can record in its queue
3	Set	Fault Command Write	USINT	0 = No Operation 1 = Clear Fault/Event 2 = Clear Fault/Event Queue 3 = Reset Device
4	Get	Fault Trip Instance Read	UINT	Fault that tripped the device. For Option Modules, this value is always 1 when faulted.
5	Get	Fault Data List	STRUCT of: USINT USINT UINT[n]	Reserved
6	Get	Number of Recorded Faults	UINT	Number of faults/events in the queue. A "0" indicates the fault queue is empty.
7	Get	Fault Parameter Reference	UINT	Reserved

## Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
0	Get	Full/All Information	STRUCT of UINT STRUCT of: USINT USINT STRING[16] STRUCT of: LWORD BOOL[16]  UINT CONTAINER[n]	Fault code Fault source DPI port DPI Device Object Fault text Fault time stamp Timer value (0 = timer not supported) BOOL[0]: (0 = invalid data, 1 = valid data) BOOL[1]: (0 = elapsed time, 1 = real time) BOOL[2...15]: Not used Reserved Reserved
1	Get	Basic Information	STRUCT of UINT STRUCT of: USINT USINT STRUCT of: LWORD BOOL[16]	Fault code Fault source DPI port DPI Device Object Fault time stamp Timer value (0 = timer not supported) BOOL[0]: (0 = invalid data, 1 = valid data) BOOL[1]: (0 = elapsed time, 1 = real time) BOOL[2...15]: Not used
2	Get	International Fault Text	STRINGN	Text describing the fault with support for Unicode.

## DPI Alarm Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x98	152

Products such as PowerFlex drives use this object for alarms or warnings. Option Modules do not support this object.

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x10	Yes	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

### Instances

The number of instances depends on the maximum number of alarms supported by the queue. The maximum number of alarms can be read in Instance 0, Attribute 2.

Instances		Device
(Hex.)	(Dec.)	
0x0000...0x3FFF	0...16383	Host Drive

Only host devices can have alarms.

Example	Description
0	Class Attributes (Drive)
1	Most Recent Alarm
2	Second Most Recent Alarm
⋮	⋮

### Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Class Revision	UINT	Revision of object
2	Get	Number of Instances	UINT	Maximum number of alarms that the device can record in its queue
3	Set	Alarm Command Write	USINT	0 = No Operation 1 = Clear Alarm 2 = Clear Alarm Queue 3 = Reset Device
4	Get	Fault Data List	STRUCT of: USINT USINT UINT[n]	Reserved
5	Get	Number of Recorded Alarms	UINT	Number of alarms in the queue. A "0" indicates the alarm queue is empty.

## Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
0	Get	Full/All Information	STRUCT of UINT STRUCT of: USINT USINT STRING[16] STRUCT of: LWORD BOOL[16]  UINT CONTAINER[n]	Alarm code Alarm source DPI port DPI Device Object Alarm text Alarm time stamp Timer value (0 = timer not supported) BOOL[0]: (0 = invalid data, 1 = valid data) BOOL[1]: (0 = elapsed time, 1 = real time) BOOL[2...15] Reserved Reserved Reserved
1	Get	Basic Information	STRUCT of UINT STRUCT of: USINT USINT STRUCT of: LWORD BOOL[16]	Alarm code Alarm source DPI port DPI Device Object Alarm time stamp Timer value (0 = timer not supported) BOOL[0]: (0 = invalid data, 1 = valid data) BOOL[1]: (0 = elapsed time, 1 = real time) BOOL[2...15] Reserved
2	Get	International Alarm Text	STRINGN	Text describing the alarm with support for Unicode.

## DPI Diagnostic Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x99	153

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x10	Yes	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

### Instances

The number of instances depends on the maximum number of diagnostic items in the device. The total number of diagnostic items can be read in Instance 0, Attribute 2.

Instances		Device
(Hex.)	(Dec.)	
0x0000...0x3FFF	0...16383	Host Drive
0x4000...0x43FF	16384...17407	Option Module
0x4400...0x47FF	17408...18431	Port 1
0x4800...0x4BFF	18432...19455	Port 2
0x4C00...0x4FFF	19456...20479	Port 3
0x5000...0x53FF	20480...21503	Port 4
0x5400...0x57FF	21504...22527	Port 5
0x5800...0x5BFF	22528...23551	Port 6
0x5C00...0x5FFF	23552...24575	Port 7
0x6000...0x63FF	24576...25599	Port 8
0x6400...0x67FF	25600...26623	Port 9
0x6800...0x6BFF	26624...27647	Port 10
0x6C00...0x6FFF	27648...28671	Port 11
0x7000...0x73FF	28672...29695	Port 12
0x7400...0x77FF	29696...30719	Port 13
0x7800...0x7BFF	30720...31743	Port 14

Example	Description
0	Class Attributes (Drive)
1	Drive Diagnostic Item 1
2	Drive Diagnostic Item 2
⋮	⋮
16384	Class Attributes (Option Module)
16385	Option Module Diagnostic Item 1
⋮	⋮

### Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Class Revision	UINT	1
2	Get	Number of Instances	UINT	Number of diagnostic items in the device
3	Get	ENUM Offset	UINT	DPI ENUM object instance offset

## Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
0	Get	Full/All Information	STRUCT of: BOOL[32] CONTAINER <sup>(1)</sup> CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER UINT UINT STRING[4] UINT UINT UINT INT UDINT STRING[16]	Descriptor (see <a href="#">page 166</a> ) Value Minimum value Maximum value Default value Pad Word Pad Word Units (for example, Amps, Hz) Multiplier <sup>(2)</sup> Divisor <sup>(2)</sup> Base <sup>(2)</sup> Offset <sup>(2)</sup> Link (source of the value) (0 = no link) Diagnostic name text
1	Get/Set	Value	Various	Diagnostic item value
2	Get	International Diagnostic Item Text	Struct of: STRINGN STRINGN	Diagnostic name text Diagnostic units text
3	Get	International Full Read All	STRUCT of: BOOL[32] CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT INT UDINT BOOL[32] STRINGN STRINGN	Descriptor Value Minimum Maximum Default Pad word Pad word Multiplier Divisor Base Offset Pad Extended descriptor Diagnostic name text Diagnostic units text

(1) A CONTAINER is a 32-bit block of data that contains the data type used by a value. If signed, the value is sign extended. Padding is used in the CONTAINER to be sure that it is always 32-bits.

(2) This value is used in the formulas used to convert the value between display units and internal units. See [Formulas for Converting on page 168](#).

## DPI Time Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x9B	155

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x10	Yes	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

### Instances

The number of instances depends on the number of timers in the device. Instance 1 is always reserved for a real time clock although a device may not support it. The total number of timers can be read in Instance 0, Attribute 2.

Instances		Device
(Hex.)	(Dec.)	
0x0000...0x3FFF	0...16383	Host Drive
0x4000...0x43FF	16384...17407	Option Module
0x4400...0x47FF	17408...18431	Port 1
0x4800...0x4BFF	18432...19455	Port 2
0x4C00...0x4FFF	19456...20479	Port 3
0x5000...0x53FF	20480...21503	Port 4
0x5400...0x57FF	21504...22527	Port 5
0x5800...0x5BFF	22528...23551	Port 6
0x5C00...0x5FFF	23552...24575	Port 7
0x6000...0x63FF	24576...25599	Port 8
0x6400...0x67FF	25600...26623	Port 9
0x6800...0x6BFF	26624...27647	Port 10
0x6C00...0x6FFF	27648...28671	Port 11
0x7000...0x73FF	28672...29695	Port 12
0x7400...0x77FF	29696...30719	Port 13
0x7800...0x7BFF	30720...31743	Port 14

Example	Description
0	Class Attributes (Drive)
1	Real Time Clock (Predefined) (not always supported)
2	Timer 1
3	Timer 2
⋮	⋮

### Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Class Revision	UINT	Revision of object
2	Get	Number of Instances	UINT	Number of timers in the object, excluding the real time clock that is predefined.
3	Get	First Device Specific Timer	UINT	Instance of the first timer that is not predefined.
4	Set	Time Command Write	USINT	0 = No Operation 1 = Clear all timers (Does not clear real time clock or read only timers)
5	Get	Number of Supported Time Zones	UINT	Number of time zones described in the Time Zone List attribute.
6	Get	Time Zone List	STRUCT	Identifies a time zone.
7	Get/Set	Active Time Zone ID	UINT	The ID field of the Time Zone List structure for the desired time zone.

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
8	Get	Active Time Zone Data	Struct of: INT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT INT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT	Standard bias Standard month Standard day of week Standard week Standard hour Standard minute Standard second Daylight offset Daylight month Daylight day of week Daylight week Daylight hour Daylight minute Daylight second
9	Get/Set	Custom Time Zone Data	Struct of: INT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT INT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT	Standard bias Standard month Standard day of week Standard week Standard hour Standard minute Standard second Daylight offset Daylight month Daylight day of week Daylight week Daylight hour Daylight minute Daylight second

## Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
0	Get	Read Full	STRUCT of: STRING[16] LWORD or STRUCT BOOL[16]	Name of the timer Elapsed time in milliseconds unless timer is a real time clock (see attribute 2) See Attribute 3
1	Get	Timer Text	STRING[16]	Name of the timer
2	Get/Set	Timer Value	LWORD -or- STRUCT of: UINT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT USINT	Elapsed time in milliseconds unless the timer is a real time clock. Real Time Clock Data: Milliseconds (0...999) Seconds (0...59) Minutes (0...59) Hours (0...23) Days (1...31) Months (1 = January, 12 = December) Years (since 1972)
3	Get	Timer Descriptor	BOOL[16]	BOOL[0]: (0 = invalid data, 1 = valid data) BOOL[1]: (0 = elapsed time, 1 = real time) BOOL[2...15]: Not used
4	Get	International Read Full	Struct of: STRINGN STRUCT BOOL[16]	International timer text Timer value Timer descriptor
5	Get	International Timer Text	STRINGN	Name of this timer
6	Get	Clock Status	BOOL[32]	Identifies clock status
8	Get/Set	Number of Leap Seconds	INT	Identifies the current number of Leap Seconds.
9	Get	Clock Options	BOOL[32]	Identifies the optional functionality available in the device's System Clock.
10	Get/Set	Clock Options Enable	BOOL[32]	Identifies which of the clock's options are enabled.



## Host DPI Parameter Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0x9F	159

To access Device parameters, use the DPI Parameter Object (Class Code 0x93).

### Instances

The number of instances depends on the number of parameters in the device.  
The total number of parameters can be read in Instance 0, Attribute 0.

Instances		Device	Example	Description
(Hex.)	(Dec.)			
0x0000...0x3FFF	0...16383	Reserved	16384	Class Attributes (Option Module)
0x4000...0x43FF	16384...17407	Option Module	16385	Option Module Parameter 1 Attributes
0x4400...0x47FF	17408...18431	Port 1	16386	Option Module Parameter 2 Attributes
0x4800...0x4BFF	18432...19455	Port 2	⋮	⋮
0x4C00...0x4FFF	19456...20479	Port 3	17408	Class Attributes (HIM)
0x5000...0x53FF	20480...21503	Port 4	17409	HIM Parameter 1 Attributes
0x5400...0x57FF	21504...22527	Port 5	17410	HIM Parameter 2 Attributes
0x5800...0x5BFF	22528...23551	Port 6	⋮	⋮
0x5C00...0x5FFF	23552...24575	Port 7		
0x6000...0x63FF	24576...25599	Port 8		
0x6400...0x67FF	25600...26623	Port 9		
0x6800...0x6BFF	26624...27647	Port 10		
0x6C00...0x6FFF	27648...28671	Port 11		
0x7000...0x73FF	28672...29695	Port 12		
0x7400...0x77FF	29696...30719	Port 13		
0x7800...0x7BFF	30720...31743	Port 14		

### Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
0	Get	Number of Instances	UINT	Number of parameters in the device
1	Set	Write Protect Password	UINT	0 = Password disabled n = Password
2	Set	NVS Command Write	USINT	0 = No Operation 1 = Store values in active memory to NVS 2 = Load values in NVS to active memory 3 = Load default values to active memory
3	Get	NVS Parameter Value Checksum	UINT	Checksum of all parameter values in a user set in NVS
4	Get	NVS Link Value Checksum	UINT	Checksum of parameter links in a user set in NVS
5	Get	First Accessible Parameter	UINT	First parameter available if parameters are protected by passwords. A "0" indicates all parameters are protected.
7	Get	Class Revision	UINT	2 = DPI
8	Get	First Parameter Processing Error	UINT	The first parameter that has been written with a value outside of its range. A "0" indicates no errors.
9	Set	Link Command	USINT	0 = No Operation 1 = Clear All Parameter Links (This does not clear links to function blocks.)

## Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
6	Get	DPI Offline Read Full	STRUCT of: BOOL[32] CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER STRING[16] STRING[4] UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT USINT USINT UINT CONTAINER UINT UNIT UNIT INT	Descriptor Offline Minimum value Offline Maximum value Offline Default value Parameter name Offline parameter units Online minimum parameter instance Online maximum parameter instance Online default parameter instance Multiplier parameter instance Divisor parameter instance Base parameter instance Offset parameter instance Formula number Pad byte (always zero) Help instance Pad word (always a value of zero) Parameter value Multiplier Divisor Base Offset
7	Get	DPI Online Read Full	STRUCT of: BOOL[32] CONTAINER <sup>(1)</sup> CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER UINT UINT STRING[4] UINT UINT UINT INT USINT[3] USINT STRING[16]	Descriptor (see <a href="#">page 180</a> ) Parameter value Minimum value Maximum value Default value Next parameter Previous parameter Units (for example, Amps, Hz) Multiplier <sup>(2)</sup> Divisor <sup>(2)</sup> Base <sup>(2)</sup> Offset <sup>(2)</sup> Link (source of the value) (0 = no link) Always zero (0) Parameter name
8	Get	DPI Descriptor	BOOL[32]	Descriptor (see <a href="#">page 180</a> )
9	Get/Set	DPI Parameter Value	Various	Parameter value in NVS. <sup>(3)</sup>
10	Get/Set	DPI RAM Parameter Value	Various	Parameter value in temporary memory. Valid only for DPI drives.
11	Get/Set	DPI Link	USINT[3]	Link (parameter or function block that is the source of the value) (0 = no link)
12	Get	Help Object Instance	UINT	ID for help text for this parameter
13	Get	DPI Read Basic	STRUCT of: BOOL[32] CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER STRING[16] STRING[4]	Descriptor (see <a href="#">page 180</a> ) Parameter value Minimum value Maximum value Default value Parameter name Units (for example, Amps, Hz)
14	Get	DPI Parameter Name	STRING[16]	Parameter name
15	Get	DPI Parameter Alias	STRING[16]	Customer supplied parameter name.

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
16	Get	Parameter Processing Error	USINT	0 = No error 1 = Value is less than the minimum 2 = Value is greater than the maximum
18	Get	International DPI Offline Parameter Text	Struct of: STRINGN STRINGN	International parameter name International offline units
19	Get	International DPI Online Parameter Text	Struct of: STRINGN STRINGN	International parameter name International online units
20	Get	International DPI Online Read Full	Struct of: BOOL[32] CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT INT USINT[3] USINT BOOL[32] STRINGN STRINGN	Descriptor Parameter value Online minimum value Online maximum value Online default value Next Previous Multiplier Divisor Base Offset Link Pad word (always zero) Extended descriptor International parameter name International online parameter units
21	Get	DPI Extended Descriptor	UDINT	Extended Descriptor (see <a href="#">page 181</a> )
22	Get	International DPI Offline Read Full	Struct of: BOOL CONTAINER CONTAINER CONTAINER UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT UINT USINT USINT UINT UINT CONTAINER UINT UINT UINT INT BOOL[32] STRINGN STRINGN	Descriptor Offline minimum value Offline maximum value Offline default value Online minimum parameter instance Online maximum parameter instance Online default parameter instance Multiplier parameter instance Divisor parameter instance Base parameter instance Offset parameter instance Formula number Pad word (always zero) Help instance Pad word (always a value of zero) Parameter value Multiplier Divisor Base Offset Extended DPI descriptor International DPI parameter name International DPI offline parameter units

- (1) A CONTAINER is a 32-bit block of data that contains the data type used by a parameter value. If signed, the value is sign extended. Padding is used in the CONTAINER to be sure that it is always 32-bits.
- (2) This value is used in the formulas used to convert the parameter value between display units and internal units. See [Formulas for Converting on page 182](#).
- (3) Do NOT continually write parameter data to NVS. See the attention on [page 99](#).

## Descriptor Attributes

Bit	Name	Description
0	Data Type (Bit 1)	Right bit is least significant bit (0).
1	Data Type (Bit 2)	000 = USINT used as an array of Boolean
2	Data Type (Bit 3)	001 = UINT used as an array of Boolean 010 = USINT (8-bit integer) 011 = UINT (16-bit integer) 100 = UDINT (32-bit integer) 101 = TCHAR ((8-bit (not Unicode) or 16-bits (Unicode)) 110 = REAL (32-bit floating point value) 111 = Use bits 16, 17, 18
3	Sign Type	0 = unsigned 1 = signed
4	Hidden	0 = visible 1 = hidden
5	Not a Link Sink	0 = May be the sink end of a link 1 = May not be the sink end of a link
6	Not Recallable	0 = Recallable from NVS 1 = Not Recallable from NVS
7	ENUM	0 = No ENUM text 1 = ENUM text
8	Writable	0 = Read only 1 = Read/write
9	Not Writable When Enabled	0 = Writable when enabled (for example, drive running) 1 = Not writable when enabled
10	Instance	0 = Parameter value is not a Reference to another parameter 1 = Parameter value refers to another parameter
11	Uses Bit ENUM Mask	This parameter instance supports the Bit ENUM Mask attribute. For more information, see the definition of the attribute.
12	Decimal Place (Bit 0)	Number of digits to the right of the decimal point.
13	Decimal Place (Bit 1)	0000 = 0
14	Decimal Place (Bit 2)	1111 = 15
15	Decimal Place (Bit 3)	
16	Extended Data Type (Bit 4)	Bit 16 is the least significant bit.
17	Extended Data Type (Bit 5)	000 = Reserved
18	Extended Data Type (Bit 6)	001 = UDINT used as an array of Boolean 010 = Reserved 011 = Reserved 100 = Reserved 101 = Reserved 110 = Reserved 111 = Reserved
19	Parameter Exists	Used to mark parameters that are not available to network tools.
20	Not Used	Reserved
21	Formula Links	Indicates the Formula Data is derived from other parameters.
22	Access Level (Bit 1)	A 3-bit field used to control access to parameter data.
23	Access Level (Bit 2)	
24	Access Level (Bit 3)	
25	Writable ENUM	ENUM text: 0 = Read Only, 1 = Read/Write
26	Not a Link Source	0 = May be the source end of a link 1 = May not be the source end of a link
27	Enhanced Bit ENUM	Parameter supports enhanced bit ENUMs.
28	Enhanced ENUM	Parameter supports enhanced ENUMs.
29	Uses DPI Limits Object	Parameter uses the DPI Limits Object. Intelligent offline tools make use of the Limits Object to select limits and units.
30	Extended Descriptor	Parameter uses Extended Descriptor bits, which can be obtained by reading the DPI Extended Descriptor attribute for this parameter.
31	Always Upload/Download	Parameter shall always be included in uploads and downloads.

## Extended Descriptor Attributes

Bit	Name	Description
0	Indirect Mode	0 = Analog (selects entire parameters) 1 = Digital (selects individual bits within parameters)
1	Indirect Type 0	Analog input list (Instance 0xFFFF)
2	Indirect Type 1	Digital input list (Instance 0xFFFE)
3	Indirect Type 2	Feedback list (Instance 0xFFFD)
4	Indirect Type 3	Analog output list (Instance 0xFFFC)
5	Indirect Type 4	Digital output list (Instance 0xFFFB)
6	Indirect Type 5	Undefined (Instance 0xFFFA)
7	Indirect Type 6	Undefined (Instance 0xFF9)
8	Indirect Type 7	Undefined (Instance 0xFF8)
9	Indirect Type 8	Undefined (Instance 0xFF7)
10	Indirect Type 9	Undefined (Instance 0xFF6)
11	Indirect Type 10	Undefined (Instance 0xFF5)
12	Indirect Type 11	Undefined (Instance 0xFF4)
13	Indirect Type 12	Undefined (Instance 0xFF3)
14	Indirect Type 13	Undefined (Instance 0xFF2)
15	Indirect Type 14	Parameter-specific list
16	FP Max Decimals Bit 0	These four bits are used on REAL parameters only. They indicate the maximum number of decimal places to be displayed for small values. A value of 0 indicates to not limit the number of decimal places used.
17	FP Max Decimals Bit 1	
18	FP Max Decimals Bit 2	
19	FP Max Decimals Bit 1	
20	Extended Parameter Reference	0 = Not an Extended Parameter Reference 1 = Extended Parameter Reference An Extended Parameter Reference contains a reference to another parameter. The value is formatted the same as an analog mode Indirect Selector parameter (SSpppp, where SS = slot number of device to which this Extended Parameter Reference is pointing, and pppp = number of the parameter or diagnostic item to which this Extended Parameter Reference is pointing). Note that an Extended Parameter Reference can only select parameters unlike an Indirect Selector. An Extended Parameter Reference could be used to configure a Datalink or show the source of a Reference (among other uses).
21	Uses Rating Table Object	This parameter has rating-dependent defaults and limits that can be obtained from the Rating Table Object. The Offline Read Full will include the default value for the smallest rating and limits that will accommodate the full range of values allowed in the family of devices using this particular combination of Family Code and Config Code. The Online Read Full will include the rating-dependent default and limit values for this particular combination of Family Code, Config Code, and Rating Code.
22	Writable Referenced Parameter	This bit must be zero unless the parameter is an Extended Parameter Reference. If the parameter is an Extended Parameter Reference, then: 0 = The referenced parameter may be read-only or writable. 1 = The referenced parameter must always be writable (including while running).
23	Disallow Zero	This bit must be zero unless the parameter is an Indirect Selector or Extended Parameter Reference. If the parameter is an Indirect Selector or Extended Parameter Reference, then: 0 = Allow zero 1 = Disallow zero If this bit is cleared (indicating that a value of zero is allowed), the device must support the "Zero Text" parameter attribute so that a software tool or HIM can obtain text from the Zero Text parameter attribute. If this bit is set (indicating that a value of zero is disallowed), a software tool or HIM will not allow the user to enter a value of zero.
24	Datalink Out	This bit is used by offline tools and indicates that this is a Datalink Out parameter. Bit 20 must also be set.
25	Datalink In	This bit is used by offline tools and indicates that this is a Datalink In parameter. Bits 20 and 22 must also be set.
26	Not Writable While IO Active	This parameter cannot be written if the I/O data being exchanged between the Host and the peripheral is valid.
27	Command Parameter	This parameter commands the drive to take an action, such as "Reset Defaults" or "Autotune," and then returns to a value of zero. Offline software tools will not allow setting this parameter to anything other than a value of zero. If an offline file contains a Command Parameter with a non-zero value, the offline software tool will change the value to zero. Note that command parameters cannot have values that do not return to zero.

Bit	Name	Description
28	Current Value Is Default	This bit identifies a parameter that will not change if a "Reset Defaults" is commanded. For example, if a drive contains a Language parameter that is set to German, setting defaults will leave the parameter set to German. Likewise, if the parameter is set to French, setting defaults will leave the parameter set to French.
29	Use Zero Text	If the "Disallow Zero" bit is set, this bit must be cleared. If the "Disallow Zero" bit is cleared, then: 0 = Use Disabled Text parameter class attribute. 1 = Use Zero Text parameter instance attribute.
30-31	Reserved	Reserved

## Formulas for Converting

Display Value = ((Internal Value + Offset) x Multiplier x Base) / (Divisor x 10<sup>Decimal Places</sup>)

Internal Value = ((Display Value x Divisor x 10<sup>Decimal Places</sup>) / (Multiplier x Base)) - Offset

## Common Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x10	Yes	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

## Object Specific Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name	Allocation Size (in bytes)	
	Class	Instance		Par. Number	Par. Value
0x4D	Yes	No	Get_Attributes_Scattered	4	4
0x4E	Yes	No	Set_Attributes_Scattered	4	4

The table below lists the parameters for the Get\_Attributes\_Scattered and Set\_Attributes\_Scattered object-specific service:

Name	Data Type	Description
Parameter Number	UDINT	Parameter to read or write
Parameter Value	UDINT	Parameter value write (zero when reading)

The response data appears in the following format:

Name	Data Type	Description
Parameter Number	UDINT	Parameter read or write <sup>(1)</sup>
Parameter Value	UDINT	Parameter value read (zero when writing) <sup>(2)</sup>

(1) If an error occurred, bit 15 will be turned on in the response.

(2) If an error occurred, the error code will appear instead of the value.

## TCP/IP Interface Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0xF5	245

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x10	No	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

### Instances

The adapter supports one instance of the TCP/IP Interface object.

Number	Description
0	Class Attributes
1	Object Attributes

### Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT	The revision of this object

### Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Status of TCP/IP Network Interface	UDINT	Bit   Value 0...3 = Configuration status 0 = Not configured 1 = Configured using BOOTP, DHCP, or parameters 2 = Configured using Node Address switches 3...15 = Reserved 4 = Reserved 5 = Configuration pending 6 = Duplicate IP address 7...15 = Reserved

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
2	Get	Configuration Capability	UDINT	Bit   Value (0 = False, 1 = True) 0 = Supports BOOTP 1 = DNS Client (able to resolve host names by query to DNS server) 2 = DHCP Client (able to obtain network configuration through DHCP) 3 = DHCP-DNS Update (able to send its host name in the DHCP request) 4 = Configuration Settable (able to set the network configuration via TCP/IP object) 5 = Hardware Configurable (able to set the network configuration via the Node Address switches) 6 = Configuration change requires reset 7 = Address Conflict Detection (ACD) capable 8...31 = Reserved
3	Set	Configuration Control	UDINT	Bit   Value 0...3 = Startup configuration 0 = Use configuration saved in NVS 1 = Obtain configuration via BOOTP 2 = Obtain configuration via DHCP 3...15 = Reserved 4 = DNS Enabled (resolves host names by query to DNS server) 5...31 = Reserved
4	Get	Physical Link Object	STRUCT of: UINT Padded EPATH	Path size Path
5	Get	Interface Configuration	STRUCT of: UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT STRING	Option module IP address Option module subnet mask Option module gateway address Primary name server Secondary name server Default domain name
6	Get	Host Name	STRING	Host name when using DHCP
10	Set	Select ACD	BOOL	Activates the use of ACD
11	Set	Last Conflict Detected	STRUCT of: USINT USINT[6] USINT[28]	ACD Activity Remote MAC ARP PDU



## Ethernet Link Object

### Class Code

Hexadecimal	Decimal
0xF6	246

### Services

Service Code	Implemented for:		Service Name
	Class	Instance	
0x0E	Yes	Yes	Get_Attribute_Single
0x4C	No	Yes	Get_and_Clear
0x10	No	Yes	Set_Attribute_Single

### Instances

The adapter supports the following instances of the TCP/IP Interface object.

Number	Description
0	Class Attributes
1	ENET1 network port
2	ENET2 network port

### Class Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Revision	UINT	The revision of this object

### Instance Attributes

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
1	Get	Interface Speed	UDINT	Speed in megabits per second (Mbs)
2	Get	Interface Flags	UDINT	Bit   Value 0 = Link status (0 = inactive, 1 = active) 1 = Duplex (0 = half duplex, 1 = full duplex) 2...31 = Reserved
3	Get	Physical Address	USINT[6]	MAC address (XX-XX-XX-XX-XX-XX) The first octet (USINT[0]) is on the left.
4	Get	Interface Counters	STRUCT of: UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT	Octets received Unicast packets received Non-unicast packets received Inbound packets received but discarded Inbound packets with errors (not discarded) Inbound packets with unknown protocol Octets sent Unicast packets sent Non-unicast packets sent Outbound packets discarded Outbound packets with errors

Attribute ID	Access Rule	Name	Data Type	Description
5	Get	Media Counters	STRUCT of: UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT UDINT	RX = Received, TX = Transmitted RX frames not having integral number of octets long RX frames not passing FCS check TX frames having one collision TX frames having multiple collisions Number of times of SQE test error message TX Frames delayed first attempt by busy medium Collisions detected later than 512 bit-times in trans. TX frames failing due to excessive collisions TX frames failing due to intern MAC sublayer TX error Times of carrier sense condition loss during trans RX frames exceeding the maximum frame size RX frames failing due to intern MAC sublayer RX error
6	Set	Interface Control	STRUCT of: WORD UINT	Control bits Forced interface speed
7	Get	Interface Type	USINT	Type of interface; 2 = twisted-pair
10	Get	Interface Label	SHORT_STRING	"1" = ENET1 network port "2" = ENET2 network port

This appendix presents the definitions of the Logic Command and Logic Status words that are used for PowerFlex 750-Series drives.

[illegible]

- (1) A Not Stop condition (logic bit 0 = 0) must first be present before a 1 = Start condition will start the drive.
- (2) A Not Stop condition (logic bit 0 = 0) must first be present before a 1 = Jog 1/Jog 2 condition will jog the drive. A transition to a "0" will stop the drive.
- (3) To perform this command, the value must switch from "0" to "1."
- (4) A Not Stop condition (logic bit 0 = 0) must first be present before a 1 = Run condition will run the drive. A transition to a "0" will stop the drive.

## Logic Status Word

Logic Bits																																Command	Description
31	30	29	28	27	26	25	24	23	22	21	20	19	18	17	16	15	14	13	12	11	10	9	8	7	6	5	4	3	2	1	0		
																															x	Run Ready	0 = Not Ready to Run 1 = Ready to Run
																															x	Active	0 = Not Active 1 = Active
																													x		Command Direction	0 = Reverse 1 = Forward	
																												x			Actual Direction	0 = Reverse 1 = Forward	
																											x				Accelerating	0 = Not Accelerating 1 = Accelerating	
																										x					Decelerating	0 = Not Decelerating 1 = Decelerating	
																									x						Alarm	0 = No Alarm (Par. 959 & 960) 1 = Alarm	
																								x							Fault	0 = No Fault (Par. 952 & 953) 1 = Fault	
																							x								At Setpt Spd	0 = Not at Setpoint Speed 1 = At Setpoint Speed	
																						x									Manual	0 = Manual Mode Not Active 1 = Manual Mode Active	
																					x										Spd Ref ID 0	00000 = Reserved	
																				x											Spd Ref ID 1	00001 = Auto Ref A (Par. 545)	
																			x												Spd Ref ID 2	00010 = Auto Ref B (Par. 550)	
																		x													Spd Ref ID 3	00011 = Auto Preset Speed 3 (Par. 573)	
																	x														Spd Ref ID 4	00100 = Auto Preset Speed 4 (Par. 574)	
																																00101 = Auto Preset Speed 5 (Par. 575)	
																																00110 = Auto Preset Speed 6 (Par. 576)	
																																00111 = Auto Preset Speed 7 (Par. 577)	
																																01000 = Reserved	
																																01001 = Reserved	
																																01010 = Reserved	
																																01011 = Reserved	
																																01100 = Reserved	
																																01101 = Reserved	
																																01110 = Reserved	
																																01111 = Reserved	
																																10000 = Man Port 0	
																																10001 = Man Port 1	
																																10010 = Man Port 2	
																																10011 = Man Port 3	
																																10100 = Man Port 4	
																																10101 = Man Port 5	
																																10110 = Man Port 6	
																																10111 = Reserved	
																																11000 = Reserved	
																																11001 = Reserved	
																																11010 = Reserved	
																																11011 = Reserved	
																																11100 = Reserved	
																																11101 = Man Port 13 (Embedded ENET)	
																																11110 = Man Port 14 (Drive Logix)	
																																11111 = Alternate Man Ref Sel	
																x															Reserved		
															x																Running	0 = Not Running 1 = Running	
														x																	Jogging	0 = Not Jogging (Par. 556 & 557) 1 = Jogging	
														x																	Stopping	0 = Not Stopping 1 = Stopping	
														x																	DC Brake	0 = Not DC Brake 1 = DC Brake	
														x																	DB Active	0 = Not Dynamic Brake Active 1 = Dynamic Brake Active	
														x																	Speed Mode	0 = Not Speed Mode (Par. 309) 1 = Speed Mode	
														x																	Position Mode	0 = Not Position Mode (Par. 309) 1 = Position Mode	
														x																	Torque Mode	0 = Not Torque Mode (Par. 309) 1 = Torque Mode	
														x																	At Zero Speed	0 = Not at Zero Speed 1 = At Zero Speed	
														x																	At Home	0 = Not at Home 1 = At Home	
														x																	At Limit	0 = Not at Limit 1 = At Limit	
														x																	Current Limit	0 = Not at Current Limit 1 = At Current Limit	
														x																	Bus Freq Reg	0 = Not Bus Freq Reg 1 = Bus Freq Reg	
														x																	Enable On	0 = Not Enable On 1 = Enable On	
														x																	Motor Overload	0 = Not Motor Overload 1 = Motor Overload	
x														x																	Regen	0 = Not Regen 1 = Regen	

The following terms and abbreviations are used throughout this manual. For definitions of terms not listed here, see the Allen-Bradley Industrial Automation Glossary, publication [AG-7.1](#).

<b>ADC (Automatic Device Configuration)</b>	An RSLogix 5000 software, version 20.00 or later, feature that supports the automatic download of configuration data upon the Logix controller establishing an EtherNet/IP network connection to a PowerFlex 750-Series drive (firmware revision 4.001 or later) and its associated peripherals.
<b>BOOTP (Bootstrap Protocol)</b>	BOOTP lets the option module configure itself dynamically at restart if the network has a BOOTP server. The BOOTP server assigns the option module a preconfigured IP address, a subnet mask, and a gateway address; therefore, you do not have to configure these using the parameters in the option module. BOOTP can make it easier to administer an Ethernet network. A free version of the Rockwell Software® BOOTP/DHCP Server can be accessed at <a href="http://www.ab.com/networks">http://www.ab.com/networks</a> .
<b>Bridge</b>	A network device that can route messages from one network to another. A bridge also refers to a communication module in a ControlLogix controller that connects the controller to a network. See also scanner.
<b>CIP (Common Industrial Protocol)</b>	CIP is the transport and application layer protocol used for messaging over EtherNet/IP, ControlNet, and DeviceNet networks. The protocol is used for implicit messaging (real-time I/O) and explicit messaging (configuration, data collection, and diagnostics).
<b>ControlFLASH</b>	An Allen-Bradley software tool that lets users electronically update firmware on printed circuit boards.
<b>Controller</b>	A controller, also called programmable logic controller, is a solid-state control system that has a user-programmable memory for storage of instructions to implement specific functions such as I/O control, logic, timing, counting, report generation, communication, arithmetic, and data file manipulation. A controller consists of a central processor, input/output interface, and memory. See also Scanner.
<b>Data Rate</b>	The speed at which data is transferred on the EtherNet/IP network. You can set the adapter to a data rate of 10Mbps Full-Duplex, 10Mbps Half-Duplex, 100Mbps Full-Duplex, or 100Mbps Half-Duplex. If another device on the network sets or auto-negotiates the data rate, you can set the adapter to automatically detect the data rate.
<b>Datalinks</b>	A Datalink is a type of pointer used by PowerFlex 750-Series drives to transfer data to and from the controller. Datalinks allow specified parameter values to be accessed or changed without using explicit messages. When active, each 32-bit Datalink in a PowerFlex 750-Series drive consumes 4 bytes in the input image table and/or 4 bytes in the output image table of the controller.

- Device-level Ring (DLR)** An Ethernet topology that consist of multiple devices configured in a circle-style connection, implemented at the device level, and with no additional switches required.
- DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)** DHCP lets the option module configure itself dynamically at restart if the network has a DHCP server. The DHCP server assigns the option module a preconfigured IP address, a subnet mask, and a gateway address; therefore, you do not have to configure these using the parameters in the option module. DHCP can make it easier to administer an Ethernet network. A free version of the Rockwell Software BOOTP-DHCP Server can be accessed at <http://www.ab.com/networks>.
- DriveExplorer Software** A tool for monitoring and configuring Allen-Bradley products and network communication option modules. It can be run on computers running various Microsoft Windows operating systems. DriveExplorer software, version 6.xx or later, can be used to configure this option module and PowerFlex drive. Information about DriveExplorer software and a free lite version can be accessed at <http://www.ab.com/drives/driveexplorer>.
- DriveTools SP Software** A software suite designed for running on various Microsoft Windows operating systems. This software suite provides a family of tools, including DriveExecutive software, that you can use to program, monitor, control, troubleshoot, and maintain Allen-Bradley products. DriveTools SP software can be used with PowerFlex drives. Information about DriveTools SP software can be accessed at <http://www.ab.com/drives/drivetools>.
- Duplex** Duplex describes the mode of communication. *Full-duplex* communication lets a device exchange data in both directions at the same time. *Half-duplex* communication lets a device exchange data only in one direction at a time. The duplex used by the option module depends on the type of duplex that other network devices, such as switches, support.
- EDS (Electronic Data Sheet) Files** Simple text files that are used by network configuration tools to describe products so that you can easily commission them on a network. EDS files describe a product device type and revision. EDS files for many Allen-Bradley products can be found at <http://www.ab.com/networks/eds>.
- EtherNet/IP Network** EtherNet/IP (Industrial Protocol) is an open producer-consumer communication network based on the Ethernet standard (IEEE 802.3), TCP/IP, UDP/IP, and CIP. Designed for industrial communication, both I/O and explicit messages can be transmitted over the network. Each device is assigned a unique IP address and transmits data on the network. The number of devices that an EtherNet/IP network can support depends on the class of IP address. For example, a network with a Class C IP address can have 254 nodes.
- General information about EtherNet/IP and the EtherNet/IP specification are maintained by the Open DeviceNet Vendor's Association (ODVA). ODVA is online at <http://www.odva.org>.

<b>Explicit Messaging</b>	Explicit messages are used to transfer data that does not require continuous updates. They are typically used to configure, monitor, and diagnose devices over the network.
<b>Fault Action</b>	A fault action determines how the option module and connected drive act when a communication fault (for example, a cable is disconnected) occurs or when the controller is switched out of run mode. The former uses a communication fault action, and the latter uses an idle fault action.
<b>Fault Configuration</b>	When communication is disrupted (for example, a cable is disconnected), the option module and PowerFlex drive can respond with a user-defined fault configuration. The user sets the data that is sent to the drive using specific fault configuration parameters in the option module. When a fault action parameter is set to use the fault configuration data and a fault occurs, the data from these parameters is sent as the Logic Command, Reference, and/or Datalinks.
<b>Gateway</b>	A device on a network that connects an individual network to a system of networks. When a node needs to communicate with a node on another network, a gateway transfers the data between the two networks. You need to configure the address for the gateway device in the option module if you want the option module to communicate with devices that are not on its network.
<b>Hardware Address</b>	Each Ethernet device has a unique hardware address (sometimes called a MAC address) that is 48 bits. The address appears as six digits separated by colons (for example, xx:xx:xx:xx:xx:xx). Each digit has a value between 0 and 255 (0x00 and 0xFF). This address is assigned in the hardware and cannot be changed. It is required to identify the device if you are using a BOOTP/DHCP server.
<b>HIM (Human Interface Module)</b>	A device that can be used to configure and control a drive. The PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM can be used to configure PowerFlex 750-Series drives and their connected peripherals.
<b>Hold Last</b>	When communication is disrupted (for example, a cable is disconnected), the option module and PowerFlex drive can respond by holding last. Hold last results in the drive receiving the last data received via the network connection before the disruption. If the drive was running and using the Reference from the option module, it will continue to run at the same Reference.
<b>Idle Action</b>	An idle action determines how the option module and connected drive act when the controller is switched out of run mode.
<b>I/O Data</b>	I/O data, sometimes called “implicit messages” or “input/output,” is time-critical data such as a Logic Command and Reference. The terms “input” (To Net) and “output” (From Net) are defined from the controller’s point of view. Output is produced by the controller and consumed by the option module. Input is produced by the option module and consumed by the controller.

**IP Addresses** A unique IP address identifies each node on an EtherNet/IP network. An IP address consists of 32 bits that are divided into four segments of one byte each. It appears as four decimal integers separated by periods (xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx). Each “xxx” can have a decimal value from 0 to 255. For example, an IP address could be 192.168.0.1.

An IP address has two parts: a network ID and a host ID. The class of network determines the format of the address.

	0	1		7		15		23		31	
Class A	0	Network ID					Host ID				
	0	1		7		15		23		31	
Class B	1	0	Network ID					Host ID			
	0	1	2		7		15		23		31
Class C	1	1	0	Network ID					Host ID		

The number of devices on your EtherNet/IP network will vary depending on the number of bytes that are used for the network address. In many cases you are given a network with a Class C address, in which the first three bytes contain the network address (subnet mask = 255.255.255.0). This leaves 8 bits or 256 addresses on your network. Because two addresses are reserved for special uses (0 is an address for the network usually used by the router, and 255 is an address for broadcast messages to all network devices), you have 254 addresses to use on a Class C address block.

To be sure that each device on the Internet has a unique address, contact your network administrator or Internet Service Provider for unique fixed IP addresses. You can then set the unique IP address for the option module by using its rotary address switches, a DHCP or BOOTP server, or by manually configuring parameters in the option module. The option module reads the values of these parameters only at power-up.

**Logic Command/Logic Status** The Logic Command is used to control the PowerFlex 750-Series drive (for example, start, stop, direction). It consists of one 32-bit word of output to the option module from the network. The definitions of the bits in this word are shown in [Appendix D](#).

The Logic Status is used to monitor the PowerFlex 750-Series drive (for example, operating state, motor direction). It consists of one 32-bit word of input from the option module to the network. The definitions of the bits in this word are shown in [Appendix D](#).

**Master-Slave Hierarchy** An option module configured for a master-slave hierarchy exchanges data with the master device. Usually, a network has one scanner which is the master device, and all other devices (for example, drives with installed EtherNet/IP Option Modules) are slave devices.

On a network with multiple scanners (called a multi-master hierarchy), each slave device must have one scanner specified as a master.



<b>NVS (Nonvolatile Storage)</b>	NVS is the permanent memory of a device. Devices such as the option module and drive store parameters and other information in NVS so that they are not lost when the device loses power. NVS is sometimes called “EEPROM.”
<b>Option Module</b>	<p>Devices such as drives, controllers, and computers usually require a network communication option module to provide a communication interface between them and a network such as EtherNet/IP. An option module reads data on the network and transmits it to the connected device. It also reads data in the device and transmits it to the network.</p> <p>The 20-750-ENETR Dual-port EtherNet/IP option module connects PowerFlex 750-Series drives to an EtherNet/IP network. Option modules are sometimes also called “adapters,” “cards,” “embedded communication options,” and “peripherals.” On PowerFlex 750-Series drives, option modules can also be I/O modules, encoder modules, safety modules, and so forth.</p>
<b>PCCC (Programmable Controller Communications Command)</b>	PCCC is the protocol used by some controllers to communicate with devices on a network. Some software products (for example, DriveExplorer software and DriveExecutive software) also use PCCC to communicate.
<b>Peer-to-Peer Hierarchy</b>	An option module that is configured for a peer-to-peer hierarchy can exchange data with a device on the network that is not a scanner. This type of hierarchy can be set up so that a scanner configures or transmits data to one PowerFlex 750-Series drive which then sends the same configuration or data to other PowerFlex 750-Series drives on the network. To use a peer-to-peer hierarchy, you configure one option module to transmit data and one or more option modules to receive the data.
<b>Ping</b>	A message that is sent on the network to determine if a node exists.
<b>PowerFlex 750-Series (Architecture Class) Drives</b>	Allen-Bradley PowerFlex 750-Series drives are part of the PowerFlex 7-Class family of drives.
<b>Reference/Feedback</b>	<p>The Reference is used to send a setpoint (for example, speed, frequency, torque) to the drive. It consists of one 32-bit word of output to the option module from the network.</p> <p>Feedback is used to monitor the speed of the drive. It consists of one 32-bit word of input from the option module to the network.</p>
<b>RSLogix 5000 software</b>	RSLogix 5000 software is a tool for configuring and monitoring controllers to communicate with connected devices. It is a 32-bit application that runs on various Windows operating systems. Information about RSLogix software can be found at <a href="http://www.software.rockwell.com/rslogix">http://www.software.rockwell.com/rslogix</a> .
<b>Scanner</b>	A scanner is a separate module (of a multi-module controller) or a built-in component (of a single-module controller) that provides communication with Option Modules connected to a network. See also Controller.
<b>SI (Serial Interface)</b>	A next generation communication interface used by various Allen-Bradley drives, such as PowerFlex 750-Series drives.

<b>Status Indicators</b>	Status indicators are LEDs that are used to report the status of the option module, network, and drive. They are on the option module and can be viewed when the drive is powered and its cover is removed.
<b>Stop Action</b>	When communication is disrupted (for example, a cable is disconnected), the option module and drive can respond with a stop action. A stop action results in the drive receiving zero as values for Logic Command, Reference, and Datalink data. If the drive was running and using the Reference from the option module, it will stay running but at zero Reference.
<b>Subnet Mask</b>	<p>An extension to the IP addressing scheme that lets you use a single network ID for multiple physical networks. A bit mask identifies the part of the address that specifies the network and the part of the address that specifies the unique node on the network. A “1” in the subnet mask indicates the bit is used to specify the network. A “0” in the subnet mask indicates that the bit is used to specify the node.</p> <p>For example, a subnet mask on a network may appear as follows: 11111111 11111111 11111111 11000000 (255.255.255.192). This mask indicates that 26 bits are used to identify the network and 6 bits are used to identify devices on each network. Instead of a single physical Class C network with 254 devices, this subnet mask divides it into four networks with up to 62 devices each.</p>
<b>Switches</b>	Network devices that provide virtual connections that help to control collisions and reduce traffic on the network. They are able to reduce network congestion by transmitting packets to an individual port only if they are destined for the connected device. In a control application, in which real time data access is critical, network switches may be required in place of hubs.
<b>TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)</b>	EtherNet/IP uses this protocol to transfer Explicit Messaging packets using IP. TCP guarantees delivery of data through the use of retries.
<b>UDP (User Datagram Protocol)</b>	EtherNet/IP uses this protocol to transfer I/O packets using IP. UDP provides a simple, but fast capability to send I/O messaging packets between devices. This protocol verifies that option modules transmit the most recent data because it does not use acknowledgements or retries.
<b>UDDT (User-Defined Data Type)</b>	A structure data type that you define during the development of an application (for example, to convert 32-bit REAL parameter data for written and read values to correctly display them in human readable format).
<b>Update</b>	The process of updating firmware in a device. The option module can be updated using various Allen-Bradley software tools. See <a href="#">Updating the Option Module Firmware on page 52</a> for more information.
<b>Zero Data</b>	When communication is disrupted (for example, a cable is disconnected), the option module and drive can respond with zero data. Zero data results in the drive receiving zero as values for Logic Command, Reference, and Datalink data. If the drive was running and using the Reference from the option module, it will stay running but at zero Reference.

## A

**ADC (Automatic Device Configuration)** 67, 189  
**applying power to the option module** 26  
**Assembly object** 155  
**attentions** 14

## B

**baud rate, see data rate**  
**bit definitions of Logic Command/Status word for PowerFlex 750-Series drives** 187  
**BOOTP (Bootstrap Protocol)**  
     definition 189  
     free server application 189  
     using 32  
**bridge** 189

## C

**cable, Ethernet** 23, 24  
**CIP (Common Industrial Protocol)** 189  
**classes of IP addresses** 192  
**Comm Flt Action Host parameter** 147  
**commissioning the option module** 30  
**communication card, see option module**  
**compatible products**  
     description 13  
     documentation for 8  
**components of the option module** 9  
**configuration tools** 31  
**connecting option module**  
     to the drive 22  
     to the network 23  
**ControlFLASH** 189  
**controller** 189  
**ControlLogix controller**  
     configuring the I/O 54  
     explicit messaging 101  
     using the I/O 92

## D

**data rate**  
     definition 189  
     setting 38  
**Datalinks (Host parameters DL From Net 01-16 and DL To Net 01-16)**  
     definition 189  
     in I/O image 88  
     using 90  
**Device parameters list**  
     Adapter mode 140-145  
     Tap mode 150-152  
**device-level ring (DLR)**  
     definition 190  
     network example 24

**DHCP (Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol)**  
     definition 190  
     free server application 190

### diagnostic items

    Adapter mode 118  
     Tap mode 121

**DL From Net 01-16 Host parameters** 146

**DL To Net 01-16 Host parameters** 146

**DLs Fr Peer Act Device parameter** 143

**DLs Fr Peer Cfg Device parameter** 143

**DLs From Net Act Device parameter** 140

**DLs To Net Act Device parameter** 140

**DLs To Peer Act Device parameter** 145

**DLs To Peer Cfg Device parameter** 145

**documentation for compatible products** 8

**DPI Alarm object** 171

**DPI Device object** 160

**DPI Diagnostic object** 173

**DPI Fault object** 169

**DPI Parameter object** 163

**DPI Time object** 175

### DriveExecutive software

    definition/website 190  
     option module configuration tool 31

### DriveExplorer software

    definition/website 190  
     free lite version 190  
     option module configuration tool 31

**drives, see PowerFlex 750-Series (Architecture Class) drives**

**DriveTools SP software** 190

### duplex communication mode

    definition 190  
     selecting 38

## E

**EDS (Electronic Data Sheet) files - definition/website** 190

**EEPROM, see Nonvolatile Storage (NVS)**

**equipment required** 13

### Ethernet

    cable 23, 24  
     connectors on option module 9

**Ethernet Link object** 185

### EtherNet/IP

    data rates 137  
     example network for ControlLogix controller 54  
     network definition 190  
     objects 153-186  
     specification 190

### events

    clearing/viewing 122  
     list of 123

**explicit messaging**

- about 99
- configuring for ControlLogix controller 101
- definition 191
- performing 100

**F****fault action**

- configuring the option module for 46
- definition 191

**fault configuration**

- configuring the option module for 47
- definition 191

**faults, *see events*****features 10****firmware revision 7****Flt Cfg DL 01-16 Host parameters 149****Flt Cfg Logic Host parameter 148****Flt Cfg Ref Host parameter 149****Fr Peer Addr 1-4 Device parameters 144****Fr Peer Enable Device parameter 144****Fr Peer Status Device parameter 144****Fr Peer Timeout Device parameter 144****full duplex, *see duplex*****G****gateway 191****gateway address**

- setting with BOOTP or DHCP server 32
- setting with parameters 36

**Gateway Cfg 1-4 Device parameters**

- Adapter mode 141
- Tap mode 151

**H****half duplex, *see duplex*****hardware address**

- definition 191
- in diagnostic item 119, 121
- on label 32

**HIM (Human Interface Module)**

- accessing parameters with 32
- definition 191

**hold last**

- configuring the option module for 46
- definition 191

**Host DPI Parameter object 177****host IDs 192****Host parameters list**

- Adapter mode 146-149
- Tap mode 152

**I****I/O**

- about 87
- configuring for ControlLogix controller 54
- definition 191
- understanding the I/O image 88
- using with ControlLogix controller 92

**Identity object 154****idle action 191****Idle Flt Action Host parameter 147****installation**

- applying power to the option module 26
- commissioning the option module 30
- connecting to the network 23
- preparing for 17

**IP Addr Cfg 1-4 Device parameters**

- Adapter mode 141
- Tap mode 150

**IP address**

- definition/classes 192
- setting with BOOTP or DHCP server 32
- setting with parameters 36
- setting with switches 20

**L****LEDs, *see status indicators*****LINK 1 status indicator (Tap mode)**

- locating 113
- troubleshooting with 116

**LINK 2 status indicator (Tap mode)**

- locating 113
- troubleshooting with 117

**LINK 3 status indicator (Tap mode)**

- locating 113
- troubleshooting with 117

**Logic Command/Status**

- bit definitions for PowerFlex 750-Series drives 187
- definition 192
- in I/O image for ControlLogix controller 88
- using 89

**Logic Src Cfg Device parameter 143****M****MAC address, *see hardware address*****manual**

- conventions 7
- related documentation 8
- website 8

**Master-Slave hierarchy**

- configuring option module for 39
- definition 192

**messages, *see explicit messaging or I/O*****MOD status indicator (Adapter mode)**

- locating 113
- troubleshooting with 114

**Msg Flt Action Host parameter 148**

## N

### NET A status indicator (Adapter mode)

- locating 113
- troubleshooting with 115

### Net Addr Sel Device parameter

- Adapter mode 140
- Tap mode 150

### Net Addr Src Device parameter

- Adapter mode 140
- Tap mode 150

### NET B status indicator (Adapter mode)

- locating 113
- troubleshooting with 115

### Net Rate Act 1 Device parameter

- Adapter mode 142
- Tap mode 151

### Net Rate Act 2 Device parameter

- Adapter mode 142
- Tap mode 152

### Net Rate Act 3 Device parameter 152

### Net Rate Cfg 1 Device parameter

- Adapter mode 141
- Tap mode 151

### Net Rate Cfg 2 Device parameter

- Adapter mode 142
- Tap mode 151

### Net Rate Cfg 3 Device parameter 152

### network cable 23, 24

### network IDs 192

### Nonvolatile Storage (NVS)

- definition 193
- in drive 90
- in option module 31

## O

### objects - list of 153-186

### ODVA EtherNet/IP specification 190

### OK status indicator (Tap mode)

- locating 113
- troubleshooting with 116

### Operating Mode Device parameter

- Adapter mode 140
- Tap mode 150

## option module

- applying power 26
- commissioning 30
- compatible products 13
- components 9
- configuration tools 31
- connecting
  - to the drive 22
  - to the network 23
- definition 193
- Device parameters list
  - Adapter mode 140-145
  - Tap mode 150-152
- features 10
- firmware updating 52
- hardware address 119, 121
- Host parameters list
  - Adapter mode 146-149
  - Tap mode 152
- installation 17-30
- IP address
  - setting with BOOTP or DHCP server 32
  - setting with parameters 36
  - setting with switches 20
- resetting 49
- restoring parameters to factory default values 50
- specifications 137
- viewing its status using parameters 51
- web pages 125-136

## P

### parameters

- accessing 31
- convention 7
- Device parameters list
  - Adapter mode 140-145
  - Tap mode 150-152
- Host parameters list
  - Adapter mode 146-149
  - Tap mode 152
- numbering scheme 140
- restoring to factory default values 50

### PCCC (Programmable Controller

#### Communications Command) 193

### PCCC object 157

### Peer Flt Action Host parameter 148

### Peer-to-Peer hierarchy

- custom peer I/O
  - setting up master (broadcaster) 42
  - setting up slave (receiver) 43
- definition 193
- simple peer I/O
  - setting up master (broadcaster) 41
  - setting up slave (receiver) 42

### ping 193

### Port Number Device parameter

- Adapter mode 140
- Tap mode 150

### PORT status indicator (Adapter mode)

- locating 113
- troubleshooting with 114

### PowerFlex 20-HIM-A6 or 20-HIM-C6S HIM 32

**PowerFlex 750-Series (Architecture Class)****drives**

- compatible with option module 13
- definition 193
- HIM 32

**preparing for an installation** 17

**processor, *see controller***

**programmable logic controller, *see controller***

**Q**

**quick start** 15

**R**

**Ref Src Cfg Device parameter** 143

**Reference/Feedback**

- definition 193
- in I/O image for ControlLogix controller 88
- using 89

**Register object** 156

**regulatory compliance** 138

**related documentation** 8

**requested packet interval** 62, 83

**Reset Module Device parameter**

- Adapter mode 142
- Tap mode 152

**resetting the option module** 49

**RSlinx Classic software**

- documentation 8
- using 53

**RSLogix 5000 software** 193

**S**

**safety precautions** 14

**scanner** 193

**Serial Interface (SI)** 193

**specifications**

- EtherNet/IP address 190
- EtherNet/IP subnet mask 194
- option module 137

**status indicators**

- definition 194
- for Adapter mode operation
  - MOD 114
  - NET A 115
  - NET B 115
  - PORT 114
- for Tap mode operation
  - LINK 1 116
  - LINK 2 117
  - LINK 3 117
  - OK 116
- locating 113
- normal operation 26
- troubleshooting with
  - Adapter mode 114–115
  - Tap mode 116–117
- understanding 113

**stop action** 194

**Subnet Cfg 1-4 Device parameters**

- Adapter mode 141
- Tap mode 151

**subnet mask**

- definition 194
- setting with BOOTP or DHCP server 32
- setting with parameters 36

**switches** 194

**T**

**TCP (Transmission Control Protocol)** 194

**TCP/IP Interface object** 183

**technical support** 7

**To Peer Enable Device parameter** 145

**To Peer Period Device parameter** 145

**To Peer Skip Device parameter** 145

**tools required** 13

**troubleshooting** 113–124

**U**

**UDDT (User-Defined Data Type)** 194

**UDP (User Datagram Protocol)** 194

**update**

- definition 194
- guidelines 52

**uploading the EDS file** 54

**W****Web Enable Device parameter**

- Adapter mode 142
- Tap mode 152

**Web Features Device parameter** 142

**web pages**

- enabling with parameter 48
- for the option module 125–136

**website for**

- DriveExecutive software 190
- DriveExplorer software 190
- DriveTools SP software 190
- EDS files 190
- EtherNet/IP 190
- ODVA (Open DeviceNet Vendor's Association) 190
- related documentation 8
- RSLogix 5000 software 193

**wiring, *see cable, Ethernet***

**Z****zero data**

- configuring the option module for 46
- definition 194



## Rockwell Automation Support

Rockwell Automation provides technical information on the Web to assist you in using its products.

At <http://www.rockwellautomation.com/support/>, you can find technical manuals, a knowledge base of FAQs, technical and application notes, sample code and links to software service packs, and a MySupport feature that you can customize to make the best use of these tools.

For an additional level of technical phone support for installation, configuration, and troubleshooting, we offer TechConnect<sup>SM</sup> support programs. For more information, contact your local distributor or Rockwell Automation representative, or visit <http://www.rockwellautomation.com/support/>.

## Installation Assistance

If you experience a problem within the first 24 hours of installation, review the information that is contained in this manual. You can contact Customer Support for initial help in getting your product up and running.

United States or Canada	1.440.646.3434
Outside United States or Canada	Use the <a href="#">Worldwide Locator</a> at <a href="http://www.rockwellautomation.com/support/americas/phone_en.html">http://www.rockwellautomation.com/support/americas/phone_en.html</a> , or contact your local Rockwell Automation representative.

## New Product Satisfaction Return

Rockwell Automation tests all of its products to ensure that they are fully operational when shipped from the manufacturing facility. However, if your product is not functioning and needs to be returned, follow these procedures.

United States	Contact your distributor. You must provide a Customer Support case number (call the phone number above to obtain one) to your distributor to complete the return process.
Outside United States	Please contact your local Rockwell Automation representative for the return procedure.

## Documentation Feedback

Your comments will help us serve your documentation needs better. If you have any suggestions on how to improve this document, complete this form, publication [RA-DU002](#), available at <http://www.rockwellautomation.com/literature/>.

Rockwell Otomasyon Ticaret A.Ş., Kar Plaza İş Merkezi E Blok Kat:6 34752 İçerenköy, İstanbul, Tel: +90 (216) 5698400

**[www.rockwellautomation.com](http://www.rockwellautomation.com)**

### Power, Control and Information Solutions Headquarters

Americas: Rockwell Automation, 1201 South Second Street, Milwaukee, WI 53204-2496 USA, Tel: (1) 414.382.2000, Fax: (1) 414.382.4444

Europe/Middle East/Africa: Rockwell Automation NV, Pegasus Park, De Kleetlaan 12a, 1831 Diegem, Belgium, Tel: (32) 2 663 0600, Fax: (32) 2 663 0640

Asia Pacific: Rockwell Automation, Level 14, Core F, Cyberport 3, 100 Cyberport Road, Hong Kong, Tel: (852) 2887 4788, Fax: (852) 2508 1846